

SECOND EDITION

DISKS
INCLUDED

MICROSOFT[®] MOUSE PROGRAMMER'S REFERENCE

- Includes two 5¹/₄-inch disks with MOUSE.LIB, EGA.LIB, sample mouse menus, and more than 150 programming examples
- Updated and expanded to cover mouse driver version 8 and the Microsoft BallPoint[™] mouse



Microsoft
P R E S S

®

MICROSOFT[®]
MOUSE
PROGRAMMER'S
R E F E R E N C E

**MICROSOFT[®]
MOUSE
PROGRAMMER'S
REFERENCE**

SECOND EDITION



PUBLISHED BY

Microsoft Press
A Division of Microsoft Corporation
One Microsoft Way
Redmond, Washington 98052-6399

Copyright © 1991 by Microsoft Corporation

All rights reserved. No part of the contents of this book
may be reproduced or transmitted in any form or by any means
without the written permission of the publisher.

Library of Congress Cataloging-in-Publication Data

Microsoft Mouse programmer's reference / Microsoft Corporation. -- 2nd
ed.

p. cm.

Includes index.

ISBN 1-55615-336-8

1. Microcomputers--Programming 2. Computer interfaces.

I. Microsoft.

QA76.6.M516 1991 <MRC RR>

005.265--dc20

90-49853

CIP

Printed and bound in the United States of America.

2 3 4 5 6 7 8 9 MLML 6 5 4 3 2 1

Distributed to the book trade in Canada by Macmillan of Canada, a division of
Canada Publishing Corporation.

Distributed to the book trade outside the United States and Canada by Penguin Books Ltd.

Penguin Books Ltd., Harmondsworth, Middlesex, England

Penguin Books Australia Ltd., Ringwood, Victoria, Australia

Penguin Books N.Z. Ltd., 182-190 Wairau Road, Auckland 10, New Zealand

British Cataloging-in-Publication Data available.

IBM®, PC/AT®, and PS/2® are registered trademarks of International Business Machines Corporation.
Symphony® is a registered trademark and VisiCalc™ is a trademark of Lotus Development Corporation.
CodeView®, InPort®, Microsoft®, MS-DOS®, Multiplan®, and XENIX® are registered trademarks and
BallPoint™ is a trademark of Microsoft Corporation. BRIEF® is a registered trademark of UnderWare,
Inc. WordStar® is a registered trademark of Wordstar Corporation.

Acquisitions Editor: Michael Halvorson

Project Editor: Nancy Siadek

Technical Editor: Daniel Lipkie

Contents

Acknowledgments *vii*

Introduction *ix*

PART I: INTRODUCTION

Chapter 1: Evolution of the Mouse 3

Chapter 2: Overview of Mouse Programming 17

PART II: MOUSE MENUS

Chapter 3: Creating Your Own Mouse Menu 27

Chapter 4: Mouse Menu Language Statements 49

Chapter 5: Sample Mouse Menu Programs 69

PART III: MOUSE PROGRAMMING INTERFACE

Chapter 6: Mouse Programming Interface 79

Chapter 7: Mouse Programming Considerations 109

Chapter 8: Mouse Function Calls 121

Chapter 9: Sample Mouse Programming Interface
Programs 217

Chapter 10: Writing Mouse Programs for IBM EGA
Modes 273

PART IV: APPENDIXES

Appendix A: ASCII Character Set 299

Appendix B: Domestic Mouse-Driver Messages 305

Appendix C: Mouse Menu Messages 309

Appendix D: Linking Existing Mouse Programs with
MOUSE.LIB 313

Appendix E: Making Calls from Borland Turbo Pascal
Programs 315

Appendix F: Using the Mouse with the Hercules Graphics
Card 319

Index *321*

Acknowledgments

Several people made outstanding contributions to the *Microsoft Mouse Programmer's Reference, 2d edition*. In particular, we thank the following reviewers whose technical skills and timely critiques proved invaluable to this project: John Pennock, Ken Robertson, Charles Nichols, and John Clark Craig. Their expertise, hard work, and dedication helped make this book a superb tool for serious programmers.

In addition, we thank the following reviewers and subject-matter experts who also made essential contributions: Eric Watson, Bridget Cameron, Tom Hensel, Jeff Hinsch, Mary DeJong, and David Rygmyr. And special kudos to the eagle-eyed proofreaders at Microsoft Press—in particular, Deborah Long, Alice Copp-Smith, and Pat Forgette.

For the first edition, we are indebted to Eric Fogelin, Tom Hensel, Greg Lee, Paul Schuster, Rich Abel, Henry Burgess, Tom Button, Stew Chapin, Barbara Hubbard, Len Oorthuys, Steve Shaiman, Rick Thompson, Bill Wesse, and Nathan Williams.

Introduction

The *Microsoft Mouse Programmer's Reference, 2d edition*, is both an overview and a technical resource for experienced programmers. The book includes a history of the Microsoft mouse, an overview of mouse programming, detailed information about writing and using mouse menu programs, and instructional information on using the mouse programming interface to add mouse support to an application program you've written. In addition, the *Microsoft Mouse Programmer's Reference* offers a wealth of sample programs in several languages to demonstrate the topics and functions it discusses.

This package includes disks that contain the MOUSE.LIB and EGA.LIB libraries and all the sample mouse menu and mouse programming interface programs listed in this book. In addition, the disks include lengthy sample programs not listed in the book.

The *Microsoft Mouse Programmer's Reference* is divided into four sections. Part I, "Introduction," provides a history of the Microsoft mouse and an overview of mouse programming. Part II, "Mouse Menus," details the mouse menus programming language, gives a complete description of each mouse menu command, and offers sample mouse menu programs. Part III, "Mouse Programming Interface," discusses the topics you'll need to consider when adding mouse support to a program you're writing. It also describes each of the mouse functions available through MOUSE.LIB or Interrupt 33H and offers sample programs in QuickBasic, interpreted Basic, C, QuickC, MASM, FORTRAN, and Pascal. In addition, Part III includes information about adding mouse support to programs that will run on an EGA and describes the EGA Register Interface functions available throughout the EGA.LIB library. The appendixes in Part IV cover the ASCII character set, mouse messages, calls from Borland Turbo Pascal programs, and mouse use with the Hercules Graphics Card.

The following notational conventions are used in this book:

<i>Italics</i>	Variable names and replaceable parameters in syntax lines, and function names in text
Initial Caps	Menu names and mouse function names
ALL CAPS	Menu command names, filenames, program names, directory names, utility names, and MS-DOS command names

To take full advantage of all the sample programs and libraries in the *Microsoft Mouse Programmer's Reference*, you'll want to have the most current mouse-driver version (8.0). Mouse-driver upgrades are available to Microsoft mouse owners for \$25. To upgrade, mouse-driver owners can call Microsoft Customer Service at 1-800-426-9400 (6 A.M. to 5:30 P.M. Pacific time, Monday through Friday). Be sure to have the following information handy: the mouse-driver software version number, which is printed on the original driver disks, and the FCC ID number for your mouse, which is printed on the bottom of the mouse.

PART I

Introduction

Chapter 1: Evolution of the Mouse

- **The Early Mice**
- **The Microsoft Mouse**
- **A Look Ahead**

Chapter 2: Overview of Mouse Programming

- **The Mouse Driver**
- **Mouse Menus**
- **The Mouse Programming Interface**

Chapter 1

Evolution of the Mouse

The mouse—a small, hand-held device that controls the movement of the cursor on a computer screen—was first developed 27 years ago. From humble beginnings as an odd-looking, one-button, wooden prototype, the mouse has evolved into a sleek, sophisticated tool that is nearly as familiar to today’s computer user as the keyboard.

Spanning fewer than 10 years of the mouse’s history, Microsoft’s role in the evolution of the mouse is nevertheless significant. The Microsoft mouse, first introduced in 1983, has set new standards for how people interact with the computer. Although Microsoft didn’t invent the mouse, it has done much to fine-tune it.

To understand Microsoft’s involvement, let’s look at how the mouse originated and developed.

THE EARLY MICE

We were experimenting with lots of types of devices at the time. Once the mouse proved itself to us, we tested it against several other devices, and it clearly won. I felt that until something better came along, the mouse would definitely remain the best pointing device for computer users.

—Doug Engelbart
Inventor of the mouse

When Doug Engelbart developed his wooden prototype of the mouse at Stanford Research Institute in 1963, he designed it for use with his Augment computer. Engelbart’s ideas later influenced the designs of

the Xerox Star, Apple Lisa, and Apple Macintosh personal computers. Not even Engelbart then envisioned what would occur over the next 27 years.

Engelbart's mouse was a simple analog device that responded to each movement of the mouse by sending a signal to the software that shifted the position of the cursor on the screen. Inside the wooden mouse body were two metal wheels that were connected to the shafts of two variable resistors. Figure 1-1 shows Engelbart's mouse.

The concept of using a mouse became more widely known in the early seventies when Xerox Corporation's Palo Alto Research Center (PARC) commissioned Jack S. Hawley to build the first digital mouse. Hawley's mouse was basically a digital version of Engelbart's mouse. At the time, Xerox was developing the powerful Alto computer and wanted to include a mouse as part of the computer package. Although the Xerox Alto performed poorly in the marketplace—fewer than a hundred were sold—it paved the way for the future development of personal computers and the mouse. In 1975, Xerox asked Hawley to develop a new standard for the mouse, a standard that many manufacturers adopted and followed into the eighties. After Hawley completed his commission for Xerox, he went on to design and manufacture mice through his own company, the Mouse House, in Berkeley, California.

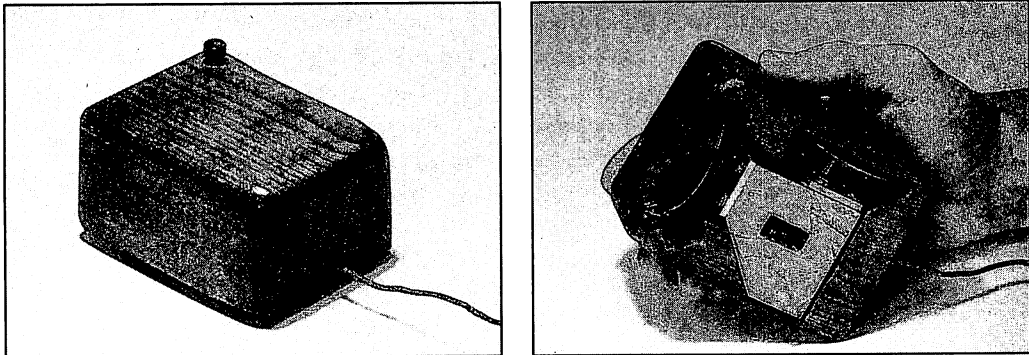


Figure 1-1. *Doug Engelbart's original wooden mouse.*

THE MICROSOFT MOUSE

As the Xerox mouse received more attention, Microsoft began to consider the idea of designing a mouse. A former Xerox PARC employee, Charles Simonyi, had recently joined Microsoft and wanted to add

mouse support to a new product, Microsoft Word. At about the same time, Microsoft's Bill Gates, Paul Allen, and Raleigh Roark were also exploring ideas for hardware products.

From a Lump of Clay

In the early eighties, Microsoft was a small company with no in-house design resources. For most of its design needs, the company relied on a Seattle graphic designer, David Strong, who had developed the Microsoft corporate logo and color scheme. It therefore seemed natural for Microsoft to approach Strong for assistance with the mouse design.

After the Microsoft team explained precisely what it wanted—a small, easy-to-handle mouse unit just big enough to accommodate the required internal circuitry—Strong went to work. He produced a 2½-inch by 4-inch by 1¼-inch clay model with thumbtacks on the underside that simulated gliders. (Figure 1-2 shows the model.)

As Raleigh Roark recalls, “A bunch of us sat around a conference table for hours just gliding this lump of clay back and forth, trying to decide if we liked the feel of it. Nobody could really agree. After a while, we settled on the design and dimensions we thought would work.

“Then, with the clay model in hand, I got on a plane for Tokyo to meet with an electronics manufacturer to get them to build the thing.”

Roark flew to Tokyo with Kay Nishi, who was then a Microsoft vice president and president of ASCII Corporation in Japan. Nishi and Roark met with manufacturing engineers to discuss what Microsoft wanted. Discussions came to an abrupt, but temporary, halt when

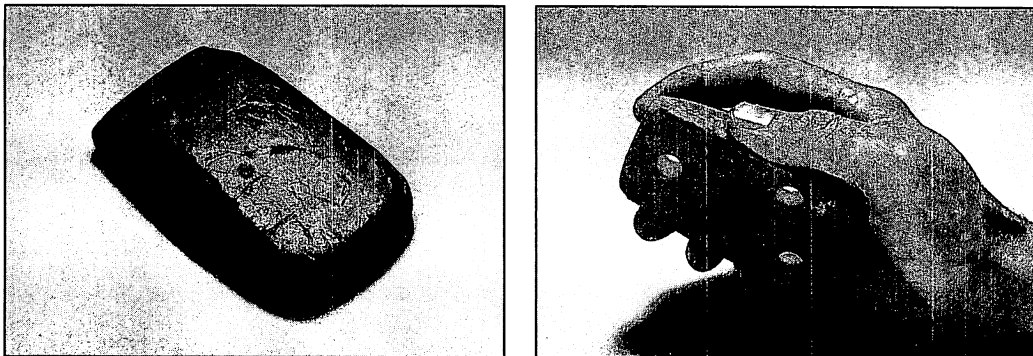


Figure 1-2. *The clay model for the original Microsoft mouse.*

the engineers said it couldn't be done. They believed that the mouse encoders couldn't possibly be squeezed into the small, hand-size mouse that Microsoft wanted. As Roark remembers, "There was a bunch of grumbling about how this was impossible—it just couldn't be done. Then suddenly the room grew quiet, and the chief of engineering said, 'Our engineers will now leave the room for exactly one hour, and when they return they will have a solution to this problem.' The engineers came back with a workable design, and a few months later Microsoft had its first mouse."

The First Generation

Doing the serial mouse was the biggest thrill for me. It was a conceptual breakthrough; no one had been able to do anything like it before.

—Raleigh Roark

Head of the Microsoft Serial Mouse Development Team

In June 1983, Microsoft introduced a new product for the IBM Personal Computer, the Microsoft bus mouse. This was a two-button mechanical mouse that relied on a steel ball and a pair of rollers to register movement as the mouse glided across a flat surface. The mouse was powered by a half-size circuit board that contained an Intel 8255 Programmable Peripheral Interface and some support chips. A distinct advantage of the Microsoft mouse (shown in Figure 1-3) was that its mechanical encoders used very little power.

A year after the release of the bus mouse, Microsoft developed a serial version of the mouse. This was a major technological breakthrough because the mouse could be connected directly to an RS-232

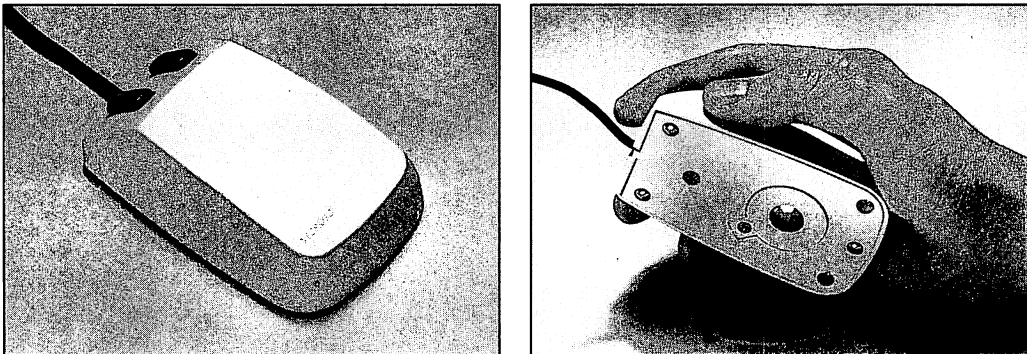


Figure 1-3. Microsoft's first-generation mouse.

serial port. It required neither a bus card nor a separate power supply because a CMOS processor in the mouse drew enough power from the RS-232 port for operation.

The first-generation mice had separate, hardware-specific operating software (mouse drivers) for the bus and serial versions and a separate linkable library, MOUSE.LIB, for high-level language development. To help people become comfortable using mice, Microsoft also provided these programs in the original mouse package:

- Notepad, a mouse-oriented text editor
- Piano, an on-screen piano keyboard that users could “play” by using the mouse
- Life, a graphical game in which users followed the life and death of simulated microorganisms they designed

Subsequent releases of the mouse software in 1983–1984 brought updates and enhancements to Notepad, the addition of a drawing program named Doodle, and the introduction of mouse menus. With mouse menus, Microsoft provided a way to make the mouse accessible to applications that weren’t originally designed for use with a mouse. Users of VisiCalc, Multiplan, WordStar, and Lotus 1-2-3 could now install special menus that allowed use of the mouse within those applications. In addition, Microsoft provided a MENU.COM program for loading menus and a MAKEMENU.EXE compiler so that users could design and build their own mouse menus.

With the release of MS-DOS 2.0 in 1983, the mouse took advantage of a new MS-DOS feature known as installable device drivers. With installable device drivers, it became much easier to configure any computer system for use with MS-DOS and the mouse.

In 1985, two major software releases, mouse drivers 3.0 and 4.0, introduced support for the IBM PC/AT and the growing number of high-resolution graphics devices. People could now install mouse software for use with most display adapters, including the Hercules Graphics Card, the IBM Color Graphics Adapter (CGA), the IBM Enhanced Graphics Adapter (EGA), and other newly introduced high-resolution display adapters and monitors. In addition, the mouse driver could now detect the hardware configuration on which it was installed.

With software release 4.0 in May 1985, Microsoft replaced Doodle with a popular state-of-the-art graphics application, PC Paintbrush.

The Second Generation

The Microsoft gray-button mouse, with its 200 ppi, changed the nature of the way people used mice. Doubling the sensitivity meant that users didn't have to push a mouse all over a desk to move the cursor around the screen.

—Steve Shaiman

Lead Software Designer for Microsoft Mouse 5.0

In October 1985, the mouse achieved a new level of sophistication with its more streamlined, professional look and reengineered driver. Many changes were immediately visible: a gray color for the buttons, a redesigned body, larger wraparound buttons, and a rubber-covered steel ball in place of the solid steel ball. But the true significance of this release could be felt rather than seen. By doubling the resolution to 200 ppi (points per inch), Microsoft made the mouse much easier to use. Figure 1-4 shows Microsoft's second-generation mouse.

The gray-button mouse required much less surface area for movement (a circle of 4–5 inches), and most operations could be accomplished easily with simple wrist and hand movements. By contrast, the earlier mouse seemed clunky and cumbersome, requiring movement over a relatively large surface area (a circle of 8–10 inches).

In April 1986, Microsoft released a modified version of the bus mouse interface that was powered by a custom InPort chip, which further enhanced mouse performance because the mouse driver could take advantage of the chip's programmable interrupt rate.

Improved performance of mouse hardware set the stage for what was perhaps the most important mouse software release, mouse

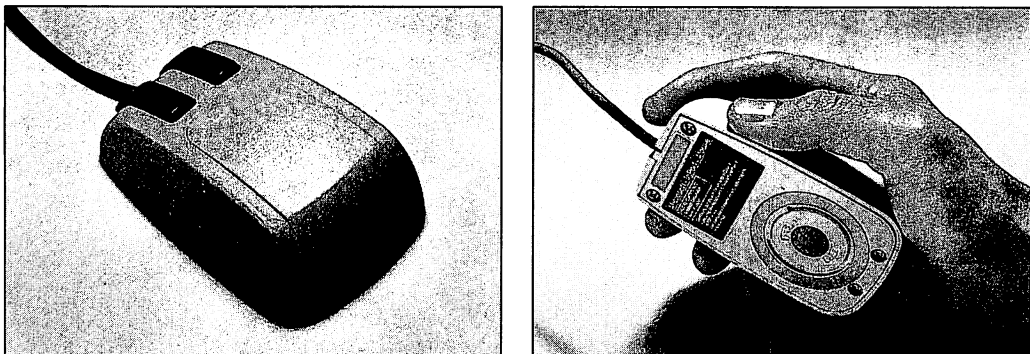


Figure 1-4. *Microsoft's second-generation mouse.*

driver 6.0. Introduced in September 1986, mouse driver 6.0 brought a major overhaul of the mouse software:

- PC Paintbrush was updated and renamed Microsoft Paintbrush.
- A mouse setup program was added, and Show Partner, a graphics presentation program, was added. (Show Partner was discontinued in version 6.1.)
- Expert mouse menus were added for power users of Lotus 1-2-3, DisplayWrite III, and Multimate 3.31.
- Computer-based tutorials became part of the package. (These were discontinued in version 6.1.)
- A mouse control panel let people adjust the sensitivity of the mouse for different applications.

Furthermore, in this release an optional international version of the mouse driver generated messages in any one of nine foreign languages, which let software developers readily build in mouse support for most foreign-language applications. The international driver is shipped to users outside the United States.

The Third Generation

The new Microsoft mouse (the one that looks like a bar of Dove soap), with its repositioned ball and seemingly improved mechanism, makes all the difference in the world.

—John C. Dvorak
PC Magazine, December 22, 1987

The third-generation mouse, introduced in September 1987, had a smaller, sleeker mouse body with easy-to-use buttons that clicked when pressed.

Figure 1-5 on the following page shows Microsoft's third-generation mouse.

The internal architecture of this new Microsoft mouse remained basically the same as that of the gray-button mouse, but some major changes made the mouse easier to control—changes such as moving the traction ball to the front of the mouse and making the left button larger than the right. In July 1988, *The Wall Street Journal* published an article (shown in Figure 1-6 on page 11) about the ergonomics of the third-generation mouse.

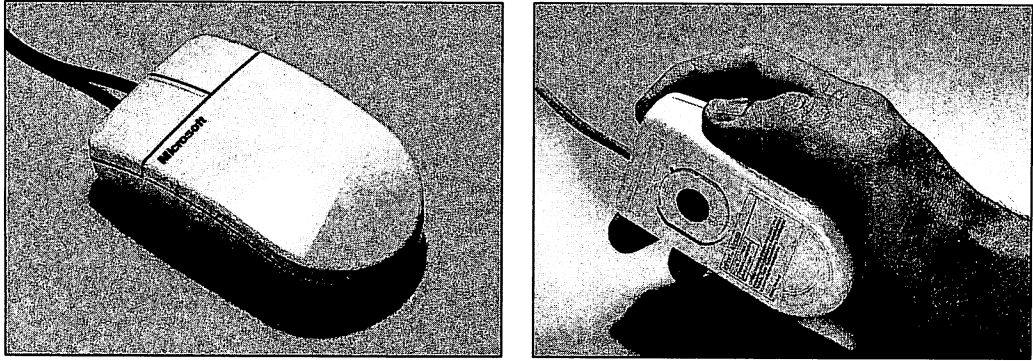


Figure 1-5. *Microsoft's third-generation mouse.*

Software included in the mouse package continued to improve and offered increasingly more options. Microsoft introduced an improved third-generation mouse—the 400 ppi mouse—in September 1989. Its release represented a major hardware and software advancement. The previous version of the mouse offered a sensitivity of 200 pulses per inch, which meant that as the user dragged the device across a desktop, the mouse sent the computer 200 electric pulses, or interrupts, for every inch it was moved. The new mouse increased sensitivity from 200 ppi to 400 ppi, which improved speed, accuracy, and acceleration by 100 percent. Also, the desktop area required by the mouse was reduced to one fourth of its previously required space.

The 400-ppi mouse also introduced the relocation of the cable interface to inside the mouse body. Previously, the mouse came in two pieces—a main body with cable and an interface box with cable. The user would connect the two, creating a somewhat cumbersome adapter. The new serial mouse enclosed the circuitry inside the mouse body, which made the mouse more convenient to use.

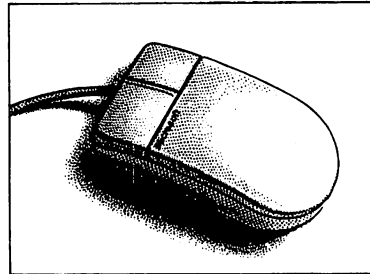
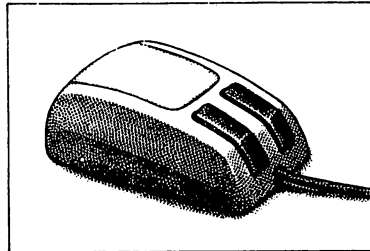
Microsoft currently offers the mouse in a variety of bus-version and serial-version hardware and software configurations. The bus version, like earlier Microsoft bus mice, uses its own card. The serial version can be connected directly to a serial port or to the mouse port on IBM PS/2 computers and other PS/2-style mouse port interfaces.

The improved performance of mouse hardware coincided with an important software release. Mouse driver 7.0 included improved acceleration support and video support. Previously, only a double-speed acceleration threshold existed. If the user moved the mouse faster than a certain speed, the cursor speed doubled. The new release introduced sixteen distinct, user-defined thresholds that could increase or decrease

Tiny Mouse Holds Many Design Problems

COMPUTER MICE cram a surprising number of design issues into a tiny package, as Microsoft Corp. proved when it undertook to develop a new model of the hand-held control.

SHAPE: "Most mice on the market take their shape from the form of a computer or keyboard. They're rectilinear, with fairly hard edges," says Paul Bradley, an industrial designer at Matrix Product Design Inc., of Palo Alto, Calif., which was responsible for the new mouse's appearance. "We used a softer form that's closer to the contour of a hand."



*Microsoft Mice:
Old (top); New (bottom)*

Matrix collaborated with human-factors specialists at ID Two in San Francisco and engineers at David Kelley Design, Palo Alto.

SIZE: "At first we thought a much smaller device, to be held in the fingertips, might give more accurate control," says Mr. Bradley. Tests proved that wrong. "Our mouse is lower, but otherwise not smaller," he says. "You can drive it with your fingertips, but still rest your hand on it."

BALANCE: A mouse rolls on a plastic ball set in its underside, usually at about the middle. The designers moved the ball forward to facilitate fingertip operation.

CONTROLS: ID Two did extensive testing on the type, size and configuration of the two buttons that execute mouse commands. It found that making one button larger than the other improved performance without troubling left-handed users, but that a ridge was needed between the buttons as a tactile landmark. Test users preferred buttons with crisply clicking feedback over a "mushier" button used earlier.

FINISH: Most mice tend to have a textured finish, often in universal humdrum computer beige. Microsoft chose to make the new mouse glossy white.

Microsoft considers the effort worthwhile. Since it introduced the model last fall, sales have already exceeded total previous Microsoft mouse sales since 1984.

Figure 1-6. Article from The Wall Street Journal about the new Microsoft mouse.

the motion of the cursor. This enhancement provided greater precision for pointing to objects located close to or far from the cursor. Increased video support in the mouse package allowed for more video modes and adapters, making the mouse more versatile.

A subsequent software release, mouse driver 7.04, introduced further enhancements—10 new information functions, the setspeed feature for loading a custom acceleration curve, and additional features for enhancing laptop performance. Further video support was also added—most notably Video 7 support.

The Fourth Generation

As software becomes more complex, more of us will need to adopt pointing devices to work efficiently with computers. There is probably a mouse in your future.

—Cary Lu

Author of *The Apple Macintosh Book, 3rd edition*, Microsoft Press

In March 1991, Microsoft introduced an alternative pointing device—the BallPoint mouse—to fill the need for a suitable pointing device in a portable environment.

Laptop computing was one of the fastest growing segments of the personal computer market. Users accustomed to running Windows on their desktop systems with a mouse wanted to duplicate this setup on their laptops. Laptop computers were becoming increasingly capable of running graphical user interface (GUI) applications; but the mouse—still the best general-purpose pointing device around—requires surface area on which to run, and portables are often used in places where little, if any, space is available alongside the system. The goal of the design team was to come up with a “surfaceless” solution, which meant designing a pointing device that physically attached to the keyboard.

After examining many different pointing-device technologies, such as touch pads, ISOPOINT, trackballs, and miniature mice, the team decided that a variation on the traditional trackball would be most suitable and began experimenting with different shapes and sizes. The group settled on a small, D-shaped device that could be cradled comfortably in the hand. The unit was operated by rolling the thumb while the buttons were pressed with the index finger. Different numbers, shapes, and positions of buttons were tried, and the team settled on a side-by-side design very similar to the Microsoft mouse, with the primary button marked with a ridge. Unlike the mouse, however, the BallPoint mouse (shown in Figure 1-7) was designed with four buttons so it could be used on the left, right, or front of the computer.

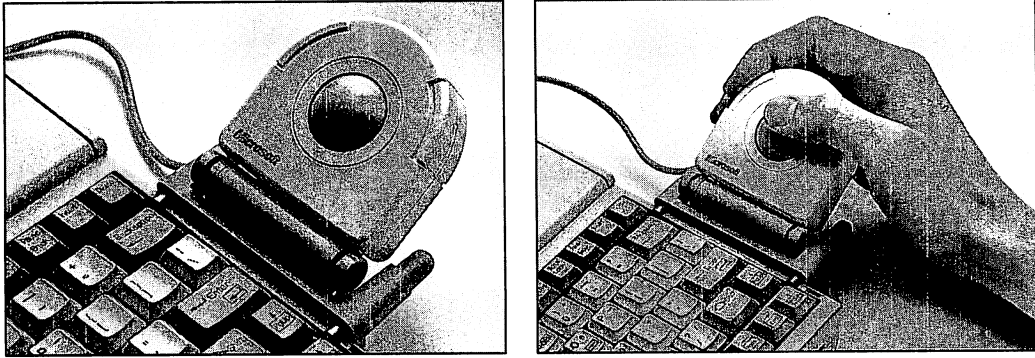


Figure 1-7. *Microsoft's fourth-generation mouse—the BallPoint mouse.*

“The most difficult design problem,” recalls Bridget Cameron, BallPoint mouse product manager, “was how to attach this mini-trackball to all the laptops on the market, and worse yet, to all the laptops that would be designed in the future.” The group finally settled on a clamping mechanism that used metal arms to fit between the keys and the side of the keyboard. The arms could be adjusted to fit different keyboards and replaced with longer or shorter versions if required.

As Cameron remembers, “Our allegiance to the mouse had made us a little contemptuous toward trackballs, so we attempted to design something unlike other trackballs, making sure the hand would be in a relaxed position while rolling the ball and pressing the buttons, and dragging could be done easily and with one hand.” The group found that the key to this was not only in the shape and size of the BallPoint mouse itself, but also in the ability to adjust the tilt angle of the unit. They designed a tilt positioner into the clamp, which allowed the BallPoint to be used at a 0-, 30-, 60-, or 90-degree angle. The size, shape, attachability, and adjustability of BallPoint made it unlike any other pointing device on the market and ideal for the portable environment.

Software released with the BallPoint mouse (driver 8.0) included all the features of the 7.04 release but added the ability to define the internal device orientation as well as to select which of the four buttons to be used. (A mouse assumes what is up, down, right, and left; the BallPoint mouse's orientation must be defined by the user according to how he or she will use it.) The new software introduced a utility called COMPASS for defining the orientation, a new function for locating the mouse initialization file (MOUSE.INI), and support for the new IBM XGA video hardware.

Figure 1-8 illustrates the milestones in Microsoft mouse history.

MILESTONES IN MICROSOFT MOUSE HISTORY

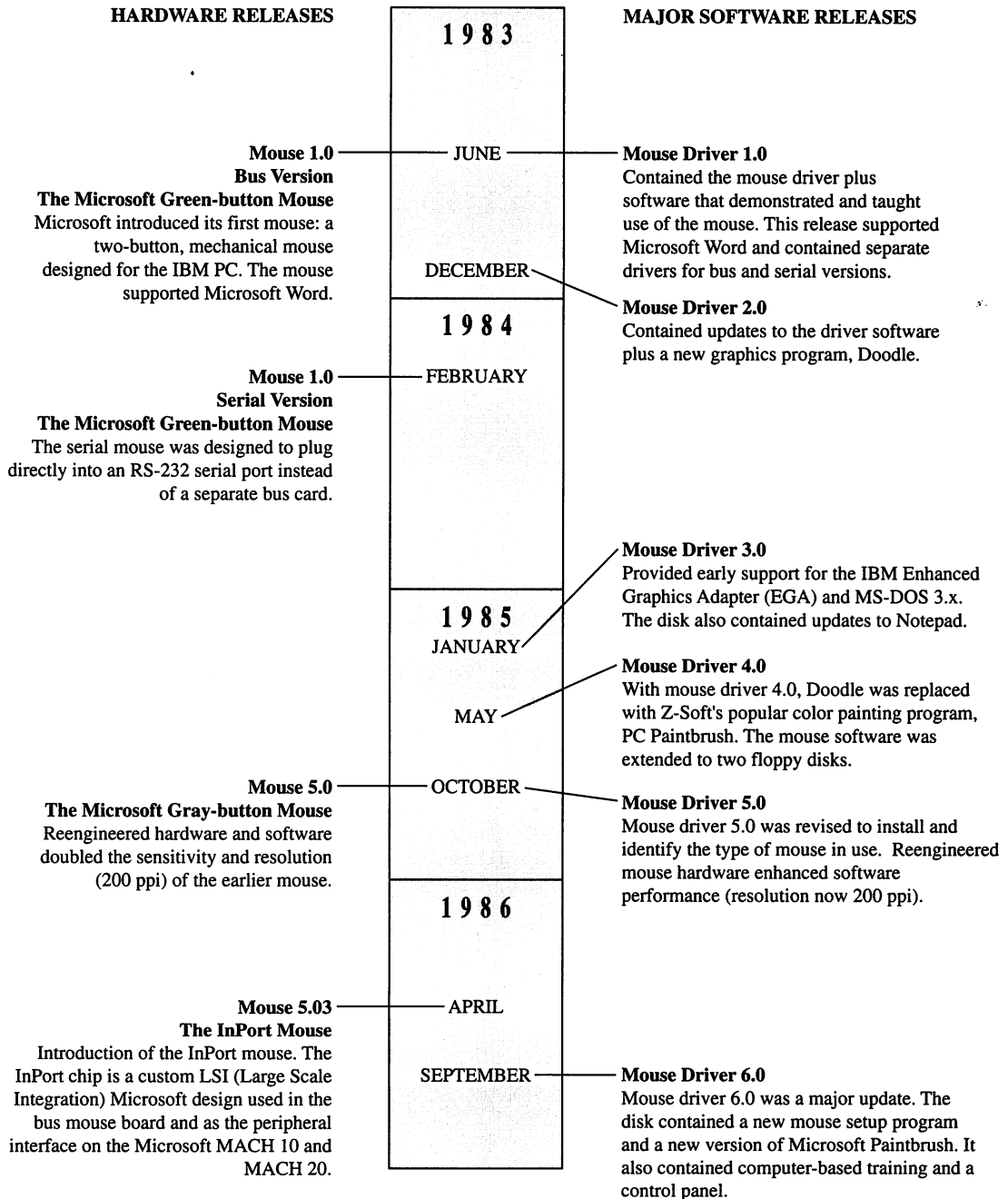
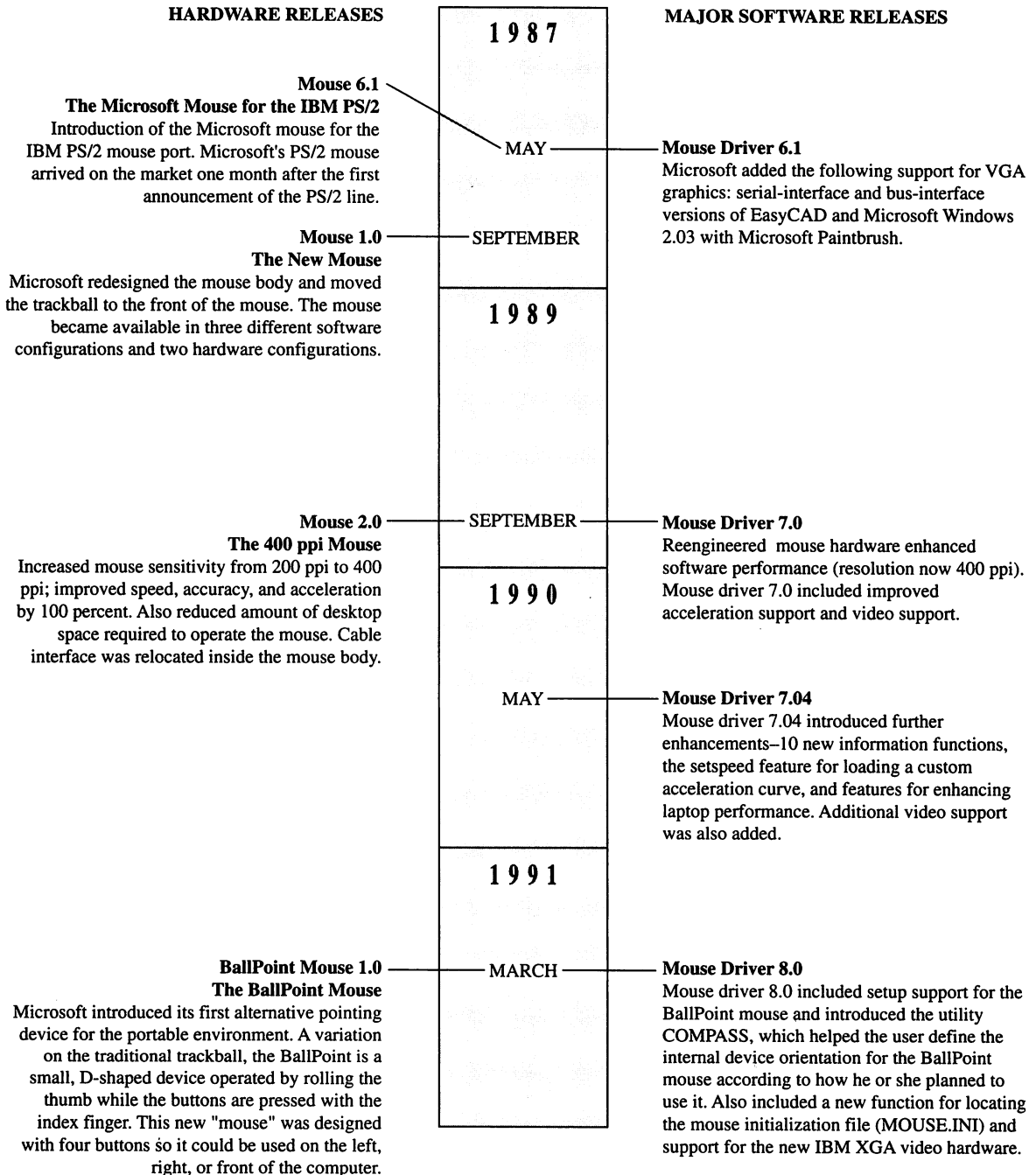


Figure 1-8. Major hardware and software releases of the Microsoft Mouse.

MILESTONES IN MICROSOFT MOUSE HISTORY



A LOOK AHEAD

Sometime in the not-too-distant future, every microcomputer will be shipped with a mouse. As the world moves to Windows and OS/2, mice will become as pervasive as keyboards are.

—Steve Shaiman
General Manager,
Microsoft Systems, Peripherals, and Accessories Group

In the summer of 1988, 25 years after Doug Engelbart crafted his wooden prototype, Microsoft celebrated the sale of its millionth mouse. Since 1988, mouse sales have doubled almost every year.

Today, software applications with graphical user interfaces are rapidly becoming the norm rather than the exception, and with this comes wider acceptance and use of the mouse. As OS/2 and Presentation Manager, Microsoft Windows, and other graphical-user-interface software come into wider use, using a mouse makes increasingly more sense and seems a necessity rather than a luxury.

Chapter 2

Overview of Mouse Programming

The mouse is an electronic device that sends signals to your computer. To your software, these signals represent cursor movements and button presses. However, the raw data sent to your computer is difficult to use in its original form. Also, different signals are generated depending on whether a bus, InPort, serial, or PS/2 mouse is used. To give programmers an easy-to-use, consistent interface, Microsoft and most other mouse manufacturers provide a mouse driver.

THE MOUSE DRIVER

A mouse driver is software that lets the operating system consistently interpret the raw data from the mouse. The Microsoft mouse driver does this by providing application programs with 53 function calls that let programs perform specific tasks, such as checking the state of a mouse button. These function calls are consistent regardless of the mouse hardware you use. (Of the functions numbered 0 through 52, Functions 17 and 18 are not supported; and Function 46 is an internal function that is not documented here.)

Microsoft provides three means for interfacing with the mouse driver: the mouse menus programming language, the mouse library, and direct calls to MS-DOS Interrupt 33H. Each method offers distinct advantages and disadvantages, and each method fulfills a particular need. For example, you can use mouse menus only with existing applications. However, you can use the mouse library and Interrupt 33H in programs you write yourself.

Using the Mouse Menus Programming Language

The mouse menus programming language lets you integrate the mouse into most preexisting, text-based software packages that wouldn't otherwise support the mouse. Thus, you can create menus that aren't already in the application, you can emulate keystrokes, and you can assign different functions to the mouse (for instance, assign mouse motions and button presses to tasks you would normally perform with the keyboard).

Using the Mouse Library

The mouse library lets you incorporate mouse support into an application as you write it. Because the mouse support becomes an integral part of the program, the functionality of the mouse support within the application program far exceeds that which you can obtain with mouse menus. The library lets the application take advantage of 53 mouse functions, which are accessible from high-level languages such as interpreted Basic, QuickBasic, C, QuickC, FORTRAN, and Pascal. The functions are also accessible from MASM.

Using MS-DOS Interrupt 33H

You can access the mouse driver directly through MS-DOS software Interrupt 33H, which provides the same 53 functions as those available through the mouse library. Because the overhead of making library calls is eliminated, a program written using Interrupt 33H is smaller and faster than the same program written using the mouse library. Most professionally developed programs that use the mouse interact with it through Interrupt 33H. Any language that can make calls to the MS-DOS interrupts can use this method of interfacing with the mouse driver.

MOUSE MENUS

A mouse menu program displays menus with options you can select. Selecting an option either feeds characters into the keyboard buffer for the current application or executes other menu commands.

NOTE: The only way the mouse menu programs interact with an application is by detecting mouse motion or button presses and then feeding characters into the keyboard buffer.

The keyboard buffer is a small portion of memory that holds the characters you enter from the keyboard. Your application program reads these characters from the buffer in the order in which they were input and acts on them accordingly. A mouse menu program can emulate the keyboard by sending characters directly to the keyboard buffer as you move the mouse or press one or more mouse buttons.

Menu software loads the keyboard buffer much faster than you can load it by typing at the keyboard. How fast the buffer is loaded by the keyboard is limited to a set rate determined by each computer's BIOS; however, the menu software doesn't have this limitation. For this reason, when the mouse emulates the direction keys, the cursor moves much faster than if you pressed the actual keys on the keyboard.

NOTE: Because certain applications access the keyboard directly, your mouse menu program might not work as you expect. In addition, mouse menu programs can't generate some keystrokes, such as Ctrl-Alt-Del. These keystrokes are listed under the TYPE statement entry in Chapter 4, "Mouse Menu Language Statements."

Keyboard Mapping

A mouse menu program recognizes seven mouse actions:

- Left-hand button pressed
- Right-hand button pressed
- Both buttons pressed
- Right motion
- Left motion
- Upward motion
- Downward motion

Note that unlike the desktop Microsoft mouse, the BallPoint mouse does not follow a left and right button orientation. To provide flexibility in orienting the device the way you want, the BallPoint offers two pairs of buttons. They are referred to as "primary" and "secondary" mouse buttons because their position might not consistently be physically left or right—depending on where you attach the device to your laptop keyboard. Functionally, however, the primary button works in the same way as the left-hand button on the conventional Microsoft mouse. The secondary button works in the same way as the right-hand

button. The COMPASS orientation program lets you designate primary and secondary buttons.

NOTE: Documentation for your applications might refer to left and right mouse buttons. Remember that for the BallPoint mouse, this means you should use the “primary” and “secondary” buttons you define with the orientation program COMPASS.

You can make each of these actions correspond to one or more menu commands. For example, some useful and common mappings of mouse actions to the keyboard buffer include the following:

- Right, left, upward, and downward motions that correspond to the right-arrow, left-arrow, up-arrow, and down-arrow keys
- A button press that corresponds to pressing Enter or Esc
- A button press that tells the menu software to display a custom menu, which you usually write to execute application program commands or MS-DOS commands

The following mouse menu program demonstrates some simple keyboard mapping:

```
BEGIN lb,rb,bb,lm,rm,um,dm,48,48
lb: EXECUTE f1 ;Left button emulates F1 key
rb: EXECUTE entkey ;Right button emulates Enter key
bb: EXECUTE escape ;Both buttons emulate Esc key
lm: EXECUTE left ;Left movement emulates left-arrow key
rm: EXECUTE right ;Right movement emulates right-arrow key
um: EXECUTE up ;Up movement emulates up-arrow key
dm: EXECUTE down ;Down movement emulates down-arrow key

f1: TYPE 0,59 ;These commands perform the
entkey: TYPE enter ;actual work when you move
escape: TYPE 27 ;the mouse or press one or
left: TYPE 0,75 ;both mouse buttons. Refer
right: TYPE 0,77 ;to Chapter 4 for a detailed
up: TYPE 0,72 ;explanation of each of
down: TYPE 0,80 ;these commands.
```

Creating a Mouse Menu

The mouse menus programming language has commands that let you create custom pop-up menus in a variety of configurations and hierarchies. You can create simple single-function menus, or you can create

elaborate, multilayered menu systems in which choosing an item from one menu can call up another menu.

You follow the same basic steps to create a mouse menu as you do when developing any other software:

1. Design and write the source code.
2. Compile the source file.
3. Run the mouse menu program.
4. Debug the program.

For instructions on creating a mouse menu program, see Chapter 3, “Creating Your Own Mouse Menu.”

THE MOUSE PROGRAMMING INTERFACE

Mouse menus provide mouse support for an existing application program that doesn't already support the mouse. However, the most efficient way to add mouse program support is to write the mouse support directly into the application program's code. The mouse can then act as a separate user-input device, not merely a keyboard emulator. The most important feature the mouse brings to the user interface is the free-floating cursor used in many popular products such as Microsoft Word, Microsoft Works, AutoCAD, and Microsoft Windows. This feature makes programs more intuitive and user-friendly.

As the link between the mouse hardware and the application software, the mouse driver keeps constant track of mouse movement and button-press information. When an application program needs mouse information, it makes a request to the driver, which then returns the requested information to the application program.

Working with Functions

The mouse driver understands 53 input and output operations. Each operation, or function, is a specific instruction to the mouse driver that enables a program to communicate with the mouse. Some functions request information about the mouse, such as button-press information, relative cursor position, and relative motion. Other functions control characteristics of the mouse interface by regulating the sensitivity of cursor motion, defining the shape of the cursor, and limiting cursor movement to a specific area. The application program makes requests of the mouse driver through the mouse function calls, and the driver does the rest.

Communicating with the Mouse Driver

You can communicate with the mouse driver from within a program in the following two ways: You can access the MOUSE.LIB library, which allows the program to communicate with the mouse driver by following the calling conventions of a particular language; or you can communicate with the driver by using MS-DOS Interrupt 33H. All mouse functions are available by making library calls or by using MS-DOS Interrupt 33H. Note, however, that each method has distinct advantages.

NOTE: The mouse driver and the corresponding interface control only the mouse. You must set video modes and program interaction with the mouse within a program as required for your specific application.

Using the MOUSE.LIB Library

You can use the MOUSE.LIB library supplied with the disks in this book as a library file for several Microsoft languages. You add mouse support to a program by making procedure calls in Pascal, subprogram calls in QuickBasic, function calls in C and QuickC, or subprogram calls in FORTRAN. The library interprets all parameter passing and declarations to be consistent with the language you are using. Thus, no special programming techniques are necessary to program the mouse. Calls to the mouse simply become subroutines.

To use the mouse library, the language you use must support Microsoft library conventions. If the language supports the conventions, you can link the library with your program. For information about linking to various mouse programs, see Chapter 9, "Sample Mouse Programming Interface Programs."

You might also want to consult the documentation of the language you are using regarding linking of external libraries. If the language doesn't support the Microsoft library conventions, you will be unable to link with the MOUSE.LIB library. However, it might be possible to program the mouse by using Interrupt 33H, as described in the following section.

Using Interrupt 33H

A command in the AUTOEXEC.BAT or CONFIG.SYS file usually loads the mouse driver when MS-DOS starts. The driver installs the starting address as the vector for Interrupt 33H and then attaches itself to the operating system. You can then access the mouse driver through software Interrupt 33H. When the software calls this interrupt, the system

finds the address of the mouse driver in the interrupt vector table, goes to the mouse driver, and executes the requested function.

NOTE: The mouse driver (MOUSE.COM or MOUSE.SYS) must be installed in memory when an application or program uses mouse function calls. When the driver is loaded, programs can access the Interrupt 33H vector by using the mouse function calls (in which the driver provides an interface for application programmers).

You can specify the different functions by loading the AX, BX, CX, and DX registers with the appropriate values. Some functions also use the ES, SI, and DI registers. The mouse driver returns values to the calling routine through these same registers. For detailed information about using registers to pass function variables, see Chapter 8, “Mouse Function Calls.”

The primary advantage of using Interrupt 33H instead of the mouse library is improved execution speed. Also, languages that can't use the supplied mouse library can use Interrupt 33H if they can load processor registers and make calls to MS-DOS.

EGA Register Interface

Although the mouse driver supports EGA and VGA hardware, programmers sometimes like to program their EGA or VGA hardware directly. Because the mouse driver keeps track of the EGA and VGA registers, programmers must take some special considerations into account when programming the D, E, F, 10, 11, 12, and 13 graphics modes of the EGA and VGA adapters.

For detailed information about using the EGA Shadow Register Interface, see Chapter 10, “Writing Mouse Programs for IBM EGA Modes.”

PART II

Mouse Menus

Chapter 3: Creating Your Own Mouse Menu

- **Mouse Menu Language Commands**
- **Statement Format**
- **Mouse Menu Program Structures**
- **Creating a Mouse Menu Program**

Chapter 4: Mouse Menu Language Statements

- **Statement Syntax Conventions**
- **Statement Descriptions**

Chapter 5: Sample Mouse Menu Programs

- **The SIMPLE Mouse Menu Program**
- **The DOSOVRLY Mouse Menu Program**
- **Other Sample Mouse Menu Programs**

Chapter 3

Creating Your Own Mouse Menu

This chapter provides an overview of the mouse menu programming language and how you can use it to provide mouse support for applications that don't already support the mouse. The mouse menu program communicates with an application through the keyboard buffer by issuing a set of commands. The following sections describe how to employ those commands to design and run your own mouse menus.

MOUSE MENU LANGUAGE COMMANDS

The mouse menu programming language includes 13 commands. You use these commands in statements that assign different functions to the mouse, create menus, and simulate key presses.

Figure 3-1 lists the commands in the mouse menu programming language.

Command	Purpose
ASSIGN	Assigns actions to be performed in response to mouse events or changes mouse-movement sensitivity.
BEGIN	Assigns initial action to be performed when a mouse event (such as moving the mouse, pressing a mouse button, or choosing a menu item) occurs and sets initial mouse-movement sensitivity.

Figure 3-1. *The mouse menu programming language commands. (continued)*

Figure 3-1. *continued*

Command	Purpose
EXECUTE	Specifies the label of the statement that contains the mouse menu statements to be executed when a mouse event (such as moving the mouse, pressing a mouse button, or choosing a menu item) occurs.
MATCH	Specifies the action to be performed if a designated character or string of characters is displayed at a defined location on the screen.
MENU	Begins a menu subroutine.
MEND	Ends a menu subroutine.
NOTHING	Indicates that no action will be performed. A NOTHING statement can function as an alternative to using an EXECUTE, TYPE, or MATCH statement.
OPTION	Specifies a menu item within a menu subroutine and the action to be performed when you choose that item.
POPUP	Begins a pop-up subroutine.
PEND	Ends a pop-up subroutine.
SELECT	Defines the action to be performed when you choose an item from a pop-up menu.
TEXT	Defines the text for a pop-up menu title or menu items.
TYPE	Specifies the key or keys “typed” into the keyboard buffer when a mouse event (such as moving the mouse, pressing a mouse button, or choosing a menu item) occurs.

STATEMENT FORMAT

The mouse menu programming language lets you enter statements in uppercase or lowercase letters. Most statements take the following format:

```
[label:] command [parameters ;comments]
```

NOTE: A BEGIN statement and statements within menu and pop-up subroutines don't follow this format because they don't require labels. A BEGIN statement doesn't need a label because it always appears as the first statement in a program, and statements within menu or pop-up subroutines don't need labels because they run sequentially.

The following sections describe the components of a statement.

Labels

A label is the name you give a mouse menu statement. Except for statements in menu or pop-up subroutines, all statements must have labels in order for the program to access them. Your program calls a statement when its label is referenced in another statement. When the labeled statement's action is completed, control returns to the statement that referenced the label, not to the next statement. In the following statement, *mat1* is the label of the MATCH statement:

```
mat1: MATCH 23,,inverse,"Format",exec1,exec2
```

When you include a label, be sure to follow these guidelines:

- Begin a label with a letter and follow it immediately with a colon.
- Leave at least one space between the colon and the command.
- Don't use mouse menu command names or the words *backsp*, *enter*, *esc*, or *tab* for labels.
- Use any printable standard ASCII characters except a colon in a label.
- Create labels that suggest the statement's purpose in the program. For example, you might use *menu1* as the label for the first menu subroutine.

Parameters

A parameter is a variable that affects the resulting action of a statement. When you use a statement, you must substitute an appropriate value for each parameter you want to use. All commands except NOTHING, MEND, and PEND require parameters.

Parameters follow the command word in a statement, with a space separating the command word and the first parameter. Commas separate any additional parameters.

The EXECUTE and TYPE commands allow up to 15 parameters. Other commands, such as the MATCH command, require a specific number of parameters. However, if you don't want to include a particular parameter, you can insert an additional comma to hold the place of the unused parameter. The MAKEMENU utility uses the default value for any parameter left out of a statement requiring a specific number of parameters. (See the section titled "Creating a Mouse Menu Program" later in this chapter for more information about the MAKEMENU

utility.) For example, in the statement that follows, *23*, *inverse*, *Format*, *exec1*, and *exec2* are five of the six required values for MATCH statement parameters. The second comma immediately following the first comma tells the MAKEMENU utility that the second parameter is not included and that the default value should be used:

```
mat1: MATCH 23,,inverse,"Format",exec1,exec2
```

The mouse menu programming language uses three types of parameters: numeric parameters, string parameters, and attribute parameters.

Numeric Parameters

You use numeric parameters for numeric data, such as screen coordinates or movement sensitivity values for the mouse.

In the preceding example, *23*, the row coordinate for the MATCH statement, is the value for a numeric parameter.

String Parameters

A string parameter can contain digits, letters, special characters, or spaces. Most string parameters specify text for menus or messages.

You must enclose a string parameter in double quotation marks (" ") and thus cannot include a double quotation mark as part of the string.

Attribute Parameters

The attribute parameter determines the display attribute, which specifies the way in which a menu or message box appears on the screen.

This parameter can take one of four values: normal, bold, inverse, or, if your system uses a color display adapter and monitor, a number that designates specific foreground and background colors. Figure 3-2 shows how the normal, bold, and inverse values affect the text displayed by a pop-up menu.

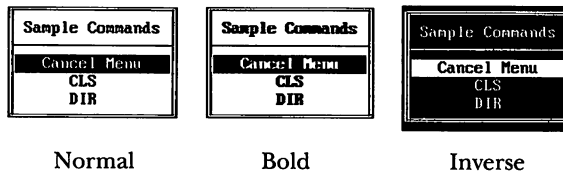


Figure 3-2. *Effects of display attributes applied to pop-up menu text.*

If you don't specify an attribute parameter, the default attribute is used. See Chapter 4, "Mouse Menu Language Statements," for a description of each command statement's default attribute.

Color Menus

If your system uses a color display adapter and color monitor, you can use the attribute parameter in a MATCH, MENU, or POPUP statement to specify particular colors for the background and foreground of a menu or message box. Text appears in the foreground color; the remainder of the box appears in the background color.

Figure 3-3 lists the available foreground and background colors and corresponding values for each color. A particular color's value differs depending on whether it will fill foreground or background. The display attribute that specifies a color combination equals the sum of the values for the desired foreground and background colors. Suppose you want to display green text on a blue background. The value for a green foreground is 2, and the value for a blue background is 16. Therefore, the value of the attribute parameter is 18.

Color	Foreground	Background
Black	0	0
Blue	1	16
Green	2	32
Cyan (blue-green)	3	48
Red	4	64
Magenta	5	80
Brown	6	96
White	7	112
Gray	8	128
Light blue	9	144
Light green	10	160
Light cyan	11	176
Light red	12	192
Light magenta	13	208
Yellow	14	224
White (high intensity)	15	240

Figure 3-3. *Foreground and background color values.*

NOTE: Be aware that color shades can vary according to the type of equipment you have. Also, if you specify a display-attribute value greater than 127, the foreground color blinks while the menu or message box is displayed. In addition, a gray background (128) appears the same as a black background (0).

Specifying the value 7 is equivalent to specifying the *normal* attribute parameter. The value 7 is the sum of 0 (the value for a black background) and 7 (the value for a white foreground). Specifying 15 is equivalent to specifying the *bold* attribute parameter. The value 15 is the sum of 0 (the value for a black background) and 15 (the value for a high-intensity white foreground). Specifying a value of 112 is the equivalent of specifying the *inverse* attribute parameter. The value 112 is the sum of 112 (the value for a white background) and 0 (the value for a black foreground).

Comments

Comments describe what a statement does. They help you and anyone who might read your program to understand the program, but they have no effect on statement execution.

You can insert a comment at the end of a statement or on a separate line. Simply type a semicolon (;) followed by the comment. If you include a comment on the same line as that of a statement, separate the last parameter of the statement and the semicolon preceding the comment with one or more spaces. The following is an example of a TYPE statement followed by a comment:

```
F1: TYPE 0,59      ;Simulates pressing the F1 key
```

MOUSE MENU PROGRAM STRUCTURES

The following sections describe how each type of command is used in a mouse menu source file. For detailed information about commands and their parameters, see Chapter 4, “Mouse Menu Language Statements.”

Mouse Event Commands

Mouse event commands, BEGIN and ASSIGN, specify the statements the program executes when particular mouse events occur, such as pressing a mouse button, moving the mouse, or choosing a menu item.

The BEGIN Command

Use the BEGIN command in a statement to specify the initial statements to be executed when particular mouse events occur and to set the initial mouse sensitivity. Always use a BEGIN statement as the first statement in your program. (The ASSIGN command can be used later to change these assignments.)

You can include one or more of the following parameters in a BEGIN statement:

- Button parameters: *lbtn* (left-hand button), *rbtn* (right-hand button), and/or *btbn* (both buttons). Button parameters define the action performed when you press one or both mouse buttons.
- Movement parameters: *lfmov* (mouse left), *rtmov* (mouse right), *upmov* (mouse up), and/or *dnmov* (mouse down). Movement parameters define the action performed when you move the mouse.
- Movement sensitivity parameters: *hsen* (horizontal movement sensitivity) and/or *usen* (vertical movement sensitivity). Movement sensitivity parameters define the distance the mouse must move before the cursor will move. This control is helpful in tailoring cursor movement to the different column and row widths found in spreadsheet programs. You specify the movement of the mouse in a unit of distance known as a mickey, which is approximately $\frac{1}{200}$ inch. For more information about the mickey, see Chapter 6, “Mouse Programming Interface.”

The ASSIGN Command

Use the ASSIGN command in a statement to assign new values to mouse events and mouse movement sensitivity. An ASSIGN command is useful when you want your mouse menu program to execute particular statements or subroutines depending on the current mode of an application program or on other conditions that require a change in mouse functioning (thus necessitating your changing the mouse-event values or mouse movement sensitivity value).

Menu Subroutine Commands

Menu subroutines create single-column pop-up menus, bordered menus that display a single column of menu items. (See Figure 3-4 on the following page.)



Figure 3-4. Single-column pop-up menu.

To choose items in a menu, move the mouse to highlight the desired item and then press either mouse button. If you press both mouse buttons at one time, the equivalent of a NOTHING command is executed and the menu disappears.

MENU, OPTION, and MEND are menu subroutine commands. To code menu subroutines, use the following format:

```
label: MENU ["title"],[row],[column],[attribute]
        OPTION ["text"],[label]
        .
        .
        .
        MEND
```

The MENU Command

Begin each menu subroutine with a MENU command. You can include the following parameters:

- The menu's title, enclosed in double quotation marks (" ")
- The row and column of the screen where the upper left corner of the menu will appear
- The menu's display attribute

The OPTION Command

Include the OPTION command in statements within a menu subroutine to define one or more menu items and the action performed when you choose an item. Always include at least one OPTION statement that lets you exit from the menu.

The *text* parameter is the text the menu displays for that item. If you omit the *text* parameter, the menu displays a blank line. Case is significant; that is, uppercase and lowercase characters are displayed exactly as you type them.

The *pointer* parameter is the label of the statement to be executed when you choose a particular menu item. If you do not specify a *pointer* parameter, the equivalent of a NOTHING statement is executed when you choose that item, and the menu disappears.

The MEND Command

Always follow the last OPTION statement with a statement that uses the MEND (menu end) command, which ends the menu subroutine.

Sample Menu Subroutine

The following menu subroutine produces the Inverse Attribute menu shown in Figure 3-2. In this example, the upper left corner of the menu produced by this subroutine appears at row 5, column 20. Because an attribute is not specified in the MENU statement, the *inverse* display attribute (the default) is used. When the menu appears on the screen, the first menu item is highlighted (in this case, *Cancel Menu*).

If you choose *Cancel Menu*, the menu disappears because a *pointer* parameter was not specified for that OPTION statement. If you select any other item, the statement identified by the label specified in the *pointer* parameter for that OPTION statement is executed.

```

menu1: MENU "Sample Commands",5,20
        OPTION "Cancel Menu"
        OPTION "CLS",cls
        OPTION "DIR",dir
        MEND
cls: TYPE "cls",enter
dir: TYPE "dir",enter

```

Pop-up Subroutine Commands

You can use pop-up subroutines to create multiple-column menus and message boxes. Multiple-column menus function in the same way as single-column menus. You choose an item by moving the mouse pointer to the item and then pressing either mouse button. Pressing both mouse buttons at one time issues the equivalent of a NOTHING statement and removes the menu from the screen. When the menu first appears on the screen, the first menu item, as defined by the first SELECT statement in the POPUP subroutine, is highlighted. Figure 3-5 shows a multiple-column menu.

CURSOR MOVEMENT	
Cancel menu	Top of screen
Screen up	Bottom of screen
Screen down	Start of file
Previous place	End of file

Figure 3-5. Multiple-column menu.

Message boxes are simply pop-up menus that display messages instead of menu items, as shown in Figure 3-6. You can combine pop-up subroutines with MATCH commands so that message boxes appear when your application program changes the display mode or when other conditions change the screen display.

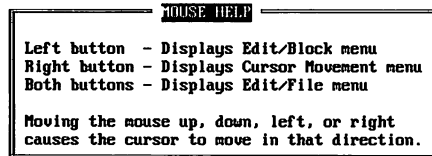


Figure 3-6. Message box.

The pop-up subroutine commands are POPUP, TEXT, SELECT, and PEND. To code pop-up subroutines for multiple-column menus and message boxes, use the following format:

```

label: POPUP [row],[column],[attribute]
        [TEXT ["text"]]
        .
        .
        .
        SELECT row,column,length,[pointer]
        .
        .
        .
        PEND
  
```

The POPUP Command

Begin each pop-up subroutine with a statement that uses the POPUP command. You can include the following three parameters:

- The row coordinate of the menu's upper left corner
- The column coordinate of the menu's upper left corner
- The menu's display attribute

The TEXT Command

Include the TEXT command in statements within a pop-up subroutine to specify the menu title, menu items, and, optionally, menu borders. Type the title text, item text, and menu borders exactly as you want them to appear on each line of the menu and enclose them in double

quotation marks (" "). The text generated by a TEXT command appears on the screen in a location relative to the coordinates you specify in the POPUP statement.

NOTE: Menus created by using the MENU command and menus created by using the POPUP command differ. The MENU command, which creates only single-column menus, draws a border around the displayed menu and a line between the menu title and the menu items. See Figure 3-2. The POPUP command doesn't draw the border and divider line, so you must include line-drawing characters within TEXT statements. The easiest way to do so is to type equal signs (=) or hyphens (-) for the horizontal lines, and vertical-line characters (|) for the vertical lines. Examples of this technique are shown on the following pages. To produce the same line-drawing characters as those created by the MENU command, use the line-drawing characters of the extended ASCII character set, shown in Appendix A, "ASCII Character Set." To create these characters, hold down the Alt key, type the number of the character on the numeric keypad, and then release the Alt key. The line-drawing character appears on your screen.

The SELECT Command

Use the SELECT command in statements to define the size of the area in which you can choose each menu item. Specify the row, column, and width of the selection area, relative to the location of the menu's upper left corner. The coordinates of the upper left corner of a pop-up menu are (1, 1). You can include a *pointer* parameter in a SELECT statement to specify a statement to be executed when you choose an item that is pointed to by the SELECT statement. As with an OPTION statement for a single-column menu, you simply specify the label of the statement to be executed.

Note that you must include at least one SELECT statement in each pop-up subroutine.

The PEND Command

Always follow the last SELECT statement with a statement that uses the PEND (pop-up end) command, which ends the pop-up subroutine.

Sample Pop-up Subroutines

The following pop-up subroutine creates the multiple-column menu shown in Figure 3-5.

In this example, the upper left corner of the menu begins at row 2, column 1. Because an attribute parameter is not specified in the POPUP statement, the *inverse* display attribute (the default) is used.

The TEXT statements define the menu's borders, title, and text. Their location on the screen is relative to the coordinates you indicated in the POPUP statement as the upper left corner of the menu. The first character of the first menu item appears at relative row 2, column 3 in the menu; however, its actual screen coordinates are row 3, column 3. When the pop-up menu appears on the screen, the first item is highlighted.

The SELECT statements define item selection areas. For the first item (*Cancel menu*), 2, 3, and 15 define the row, column, and width of the selection area. Because the SELECT statement for the *Cancel menu* doesn't include a label for the *pointer* parameter, the menu disappears from the screen if you choose *Cancel menu*. The other SELECT statements execute the statements named in their *pointer* parameters.

```

movemen: POPUP 2,1
        TEXT " ===== CURSOR MOVEMENT ===== "
        TEXT ": Cancel menu      Top of screen      !"
        TEXT ": Screen up        Bottom of screen !"
        TEXT ": Screen down     Start of file      !"
        TEXT ": Previous place End of file      !"
        TEXT " ===== "
        SELECT 2,3,15
        SELECT 3,3,15,keyctrlr
        SELECT 4,3,15,keyctrlc
        SELECT 5,3,15,keyctrlqp
        SELECT 2,18,17,keyctrlqe
        SELECT 3,18,17,keyctrlqx
        SELECT 4,18,17,keyctrlqr
        SELECT 5,18,17,keyctrlqc
        PEND

```

The following pop-up subroutine creates the message box shown in Figure 3-6. Note that the message box in Figure 3-6 uses the extended ASCII characters 186, 187, 188, 200, 201, and 205 to create the border.

In this example, the POPUP statement defines row 2, column 1 as the upper left corner coordinates. Because an *attribute* parameter is not specified in the POPUP statement, the *inverse* display attribute is used.

The TEXT statements define the message-box border, title, and message text. Their screen location is relative to the coordinates you specified in the POPUP statement as the location of the upper left corner of the menu. The single SELECT statement highlights the menu

box title. Because the subroutine that produces the message box contains only one SELECT statement, you cannot move the cursor within the message box.

```

mousehlp: POPUP 2,1
  TEXT " ===== MOUSE HELP ===== "
  TEXT ";";
  TEXT "; Left button - Displays Edit/Block menu ";
  TEXT "; Right button - Displays Cursor Movement menu ";
  TEXT "; Both buttons - Displays Edit/File menu ";
  TEXT ";";
  TEXT "; Moving the mouse up, down, left, or right ";
  TEXT "; causes the cursor to move in that direction. ";
  TEXT ";";
  TEXT " ===== "
  SELECT 1,18,10
  PEND

```

Action Commands

Action commands specify the action to be performed when you choose a menu item, press one or both mouse buttons, or move the mouse. The EXECUTE, TYPE, and NOTHING commands are action commands.

It's important to understand the sequence of performed actions in mouse menu programs. Most programming languages follow sequentially from one statement to the next unless they encounter a branching statement or a subroutine call. You can think of each mouse menu program statement as a subroutine, with an implied return at the end. And think of menu and pop-up subroutine blocks as single complex statements.

A mouse menu program is started when an action specified in a BEGIN or ASSIGN statement, such as pressing a mouse button or moving the mouse, occurs. The program then branches to the labeled statement indicated in the BEGIN or ASSIGN statement. When the program executes that statement, it returns to the BEGIN or ASSIGN statement and then terminates. Before completing its task, however, that statement might call another statement, and so on.

When the program completes the action of a labeled statement, it returns control to the statement that referenced that label. The program terminates when the nested chain of statements completes its tasks and the program flow returns to the originating BEGIN or ASSIGN statement.

The following example shows the flow of the action when you press the right-hand mouse button:

```

BEGIN    leftb,rightb          ;Pressing the right button calls "rightb"

leftb:   NOTHING              ;Pressing the left button does nothing

rightb:  MATCH 1,1,,"XXX",found,nope ;If XXX is found in the upper left
                                         ;corner, call "found"--otherwise, call
                                         ;"nope"

found:   EXECUTE txt1,txt3      ;Simulates typing "Xs were found!"
nope:    EXECUTE txt1,txt2,txt3 ;Simulates typing "Xs were not found!"

txt1:    TYPE "Xs were "
txt2:    TYPE "not "
txt3:    TYPE "found!"

```

Assuming that *XXX* is currently displayed in the upper left corner of the screen, the program performs the following actions when the right-hand button is pressed.

Statement	Action
1. BEGIN	Program begins here when you press the right button.
2. BEGIN:rightb	The BEGIN statement calls <i>rightb</i> .
3. BEGIN:rightb:found	The MATCH statement labeled <i>rightb</i> calls <i>found</i> .
4. BEGIN:rightb:found:txt1	The EXECUTE statement labeled <i>found</i> calls <i>txt1</i> .
5. BEGIN:rightb:found	The TYPE statement labeled <i>txt1</i> is executed, and control returns to <i>found</i> .
6. BEGIN:rightb:found:txt3	The EXECUTE statement labeled <i>found</i> calls <i>txt3</i> .
7. BEGIN:rightb:found	The TYPE statement labeled <i>txt3</i> is executed, and control returns to <i>found</i> .
8. BEGIN:rightb	The EXECUTE statement labeled <i>found</i> is executed, and control returns to <i>rightb</i> .
9. BEGIN	The MATCH statement labeled <i>rightb</i> is executed, and control returns to the originating BEGIN statement. The BEGIN statement is executed, the mouse menu program terminates, and control returns to you.

The EXECUTE Command

Use the EXECUTE command in a statement to define a series of statements to be executed when you perform one of the following actions:

- Press one or both mouse buttons.
- Choose a menu item.
- Move the mouse.
- Cause a MATCH command to be executed.

You use statement labels to identify statements that an EXECUTE statement calls. You can specify up to 15 labels for each EXECUTE statement. The following EXECUTE statement includes five labels. The program executes the statement labeled *dsk*, and then the statement labeled *s*, and so on. After the program executes the statement labeled *exec 4*, it returns to the statement that referenced *exec1*.

```
exec1: EXECUTE dsk,s,a,s,exec4
```

It is possible for an EXECUTE statement to call another EXECUTE statement. In fact, up to 15 EXECUTE statements can call other EXECUTE statements. For example, the following sequence of nested statements simulates typing **abcdef**:

```
start: EXECUTE abcdef
abcdef: EXECUTE abc,def
abc: EXECUTE ab,c
ab: EXECUTE a,b
a: TYPE "a"
b: TYPE "b"
c: TYPE "c"
def: TYPE "def"
```

The TYPE Command

Use a TYPE command in a statement to simulate key presses. For example, the following TYPE statement simulates pressing the A key:

```
key1: TYPE "A"
```

The following TYPE statement simulates typing the *diskcopy a: b:* command and pressing the Enter key:

```
key15: TYPE "diskcopy a: b:",enter
```

Note that you can enter a series of separate keystrokes by separating each group with commas. You can indicate which key is simulated in one of the following three ways:

- Enter the key's name enclosed in double quotation marks (for example, "A").
- Enter the ASCII code that matches the character on the key (for example, enter 65 for A). You can use extended ASCII codes, ASCII control characters, and extended-keyboard scan codes to simulate special keys or key sequences, such as the Alt, Ctrl-Q, Spacebar, and direction keys. (For a list of ASCII control characters and extended-keyboard scan codes, see Appendix A, "ASCII Character Set.")
- Enter the key's symbolic name if it has one. The predefined symbolic keys are Enter, Tab, Backsp, and Esc.

In the following TYPE statements, the comments indicate which key or keys each statement simulates. Notice that the statements labeled *dir* and *a* simulate typing character strings by enclosing the characters in double quotation marks. The statements labeled *lf*, *rt*, *up*, and *dn* define the direction keys by using extended keyboard scan codes. The statement labeled *s* simulates pressing the spacebar by using the standard ASCII code for a space. The statement labeled *ent* simulates pressing the Enter key by using the symbolic name for the key. The statement labeled *cls* simulates typing the MS-DOS CLS command and pressing the Enter key. The statements labeled *ctrlc* and *ctrld* simulate pressing Ctrl-key combinations. The statements labeled *home* and *end* simulate pressing the Home and End keys.

Statement	Comments
dir: TYPE "dir"	; Types the DIR command
a: TYPE "a:"	; Types a:
lf: TYPE 0,75	; Simulates pressing the left-arrow key
rt: TYPE 0,77	; Simulates pressing the right-arrow key
up: TYPE 0,72	; Simulates pressing the up-arrow key
dn: TYPE 0,80	; Simulates pressing the down-arrow key
s: TYPE 32	; Types a space
ent: TYPE enter	; Simulates pressing the Enter key

(continued)

continued

Statement	Comments
cls: TYPE "cls",enter	; Types CLS command, simulates pressing the Enter key
ctrlc: TYPE 3	; Simulates pressing Ctrl-C
ctrld: TYPE 4	; Simulates pressing Ctrl-D
home: TYPE 0,71	; Simulates pressing the Home key
end: TYPE 0,79	; Simulates pressing the End key

The NOTHING Command

Use a NOTHING command in a statement to specify that no action is to be performed.

The MATCH Command

Use the MATCH command in a statement to direct a mouse menu program to perform an action depending on what is displayed on the screen.

A MATCH statement's parameters specify a string of characters, a row and column on the screen, and a display attribute. If a line on the screen matches the specified string, begins at the specified row and column, and appears in the specified display attribute, then the program executes an assigned statement. This feature enables a mouse menu program to respond to different operating modes of the application program or screen display.

For example, if an application program always displays the word *COMMAND* in column 1 of row 22 of the screen when it is in command mode and if it displays the word *ALPHA* in the same place when it is in alphanumeric mode, you can use a MATCH command to perform an action depending on which mode the application program is in.

A MATCH statement takes the following format:

```
MATCH row,column,[attribute],string,match,nomatch
```

The *row* and *column* parameters describe where the *string* parameter must be located on the screen to qualify as a match. To be matched, the row and column parameters must point to the first character of a string. If *row* and *column* parameters are not included, the default location coordinate becomes (1, 1). If the *string* parameter is not included, the match succeeds with any text.

The *attribute* parameter indicates how the string must appear on the screen for a match. This parameter can take normal, bold, or inverse symbolic values or an integer value that denotes specific foreground and background colors. If the *attribute* parameter is not included or if it has the value 0, all display attributes are matched.

The *match* and *nomatch* parameters are the labels of the statements executed if the match is made or not made, respectively. If the *match* or *nomatch* parameters are not included, the equivalent of a NOTHING command is executed.

Sample Program

The following mouse menu source program shows how MATCH statements are used. It also changes the active drive when you press the right-hand mouse button. The program follows this procedure:

1. When you press the right-hand mouse button, the *chdriv* EXECUTE statement calls the *checka* MATCH statement and then clears the screen.
2. The *checka* MATCH statement checks row 2, column 1 on the screen. If it finds a: in normal display mode, it executes the *tob* statement. If a: is not found, it executes the *checkb* statement, which performs a similar check for the b: characters. The program calls up to three MATCH statements, looking for the first match with a:, b:, or c:.
3. The *tob* statement clears the screen, changes the active drive to B, and ends the mouse menu program. Similarly, *toc* and *toa* change the active drive to C or A.
4. If the three MATCH statements fail to find a:, b:, or c: at row 2, column 1, the program clears the screen and terminates without changing the active drive. With the screen cleared, the MS-DOS prompt should put the active drive letter in row 2, column 1, ready for the next press of the right-hand mouse button.
5. Pressing the left-hand button creates a directory listing, and pressing both buttons simulates pressing Ctrl-C.

```

BEGIN dir,chdriv,ctrlc           ;Labels for left, right, or both
                                ;Buttons
chdriv: EXECUTE checka,cls       ;Calls "checka," then clears screen

checka: MATCH 2,1,normal,"a:",tob,checkb ;If a: found, change to drive B
checkb: MATCH 2,1,normal,"b:",toc,checkc ;If b: found, change to drive C
checkc: MATCH 2,1,normal,"c:",toa       ;If c: found, change to drive A

toa: EXECUTE cls,a,ent           ;Clears screen, changes to drive A
tob: EXECUTE cls,b,ent           ;Clears screen, changes to drive B
toc: EXECUTE cls,c,ent           ;Clears screen, changes to drive C

a: TYPE "a:"                     ;Types a:
b: TYPE "b:"                     ;Types b:
c: TYPE "c:"                     ;Types c:

cls: TYPE "cls",enter            ;Clears the screen
dir: TYPE "dir",enter            ;Creates directory listing

ent: TYPE enter                  ;Simulates pressing the Enter key
ctrlc: TYPE 3                    ;Simulates pressing Ctrl-C

```

CREATING A MOUSE MENU PROGRAM

The following procedure lets you create a mouse menu source file. It then shows you how to create a mouse menu program from the source file by using the MAKEMENU utility.

To create a mouse menu program, take the following steps:

1. Create the mouse menu source file by using a text editor or word processing program.
2. Save the source file with the filename extension DEF. A file with this extension is used by the MAKEMENU utility to generate a mouse menu program (a MNU file). When a source file is converted to a MNU file, the resulting program must not exceed 57 KB.
3. Type **makemenu** and press the Enter key.
4. At the prompt, type the name of the source file (without the DEF extension), and then press the Enter key.

*NOTE: Be sure to save the source file as a standard ASCII text file. Most simple text editors save files in ASCII by default. In word processing programs, however, you usually need to select a special unformatted option to create ASCII text. You can combine steps 3 and 4 by typing **makemenu** followed by a space and the name of the source file (without the DEF extension) on the same line.*

If your file contains no errors, MAKEMENU displays the following message:

```
Conversion completed
```

and returns you to MS-DOS. The mouse menu is then ready for you to test. However, if your file contains errors, MAKEMENU displays the types of errors and the statements that contain the errors. In this case, correct the source file and repeat steps 3 and 4. For more information about error messages, see Appendix B, “Domestic Mouse-Driver Messages.”

NOTE: The disks that come with this book contain mouse menu source programs for some commonly used applications (such as WordStar) that don't include built-in mouse support. If you want to create a mouse menu from one of the source programs included on the disks, you can copy the source file and edit the copy to meet your specific needs. You can then use the procedure just discussed to create mouse menus.

WARNING: Mouse menu programs that use the TYPE command might not work under DOS 4.0 and 4.01. The menu will install into memory but will not interface correctly with DOS. The only available solution is to load the ANSI.SYS driver (that comes with DOS) by inserting the following line in your CONFIG.SYS file:

```
device=c:\dos\ansi.sys /1 /k
```

WARNING: The running of any of the following Microsoft products will disable previously installed mouse menus: Microsoft Word; Microsoft QuickC; Microsoft QuickBasic; M, the editor for MASM; and PWB, the editor of Microsoft C.

Testing the Mouse Menu Program

When the mouse menu source file has been successfully translated into an executable menu file, it is ready for you to test.

*NOTE: If when you ran the Mouse Setup program you did not specify that the mouse driver should be loaded every time you start MS-DOS, be sure you type **mouse** to install the mouse driver before you run your menu program. The menu program will load before you type **mouse**; however, it will not work.*

To test the mouse menu program, take the following steps:

1. Type **menu filename** at the MS-DOS prompt, and press the Enter key to start your mouse menu program. In this command, *filename* is the name of the MNU file generated by MAKEMENU with or without the MNU extension. When the mouse menu file is loaded, the following message appears:

Menu installed

2. Start your application program, and test the menu to be sure it works under all conditions in your program.
3. If your application program doesn't work properly, quit the application program and then end the mouse menu program by typing **menu off** at the MS-DOS prompt and pressing the Enter key. The following message is displayed:

Keyboard emulation off

4. Correct the source file, and then run the MAKEMENU utility again.

Running a Mouse Menu Program

Follow the steps below to run a mouse menu program.

1. Use the MS-DOS COPY command to copy the mouse menu (MNU) file and the MENU.COM file onto the disk that contains the application program to be used with the menu.
2. Type **menu filename** to run the mouse menu program for the application. In this command, *filename* is the name of the mouse menu program. When the mouse menu file is loaded, the following message appears:

Menu installed

NOTE: To start a mouse menu program that is not in the current directory, include as part of filename the pathname of the directory that contains the mouse menu file.

3. Run the application program according to the instructions in the program's documentation.

A mouse menu program runs independently of the corresponding application program. You should end a mouse menu program and begin another whenever you end one application and begin another.

Ending a Mouse Menu Program

To end the mouse menu program, simply type **menu off** and press the Enter key. The following message is displayed:

```
Keyboard emulation off
```

You can then load and run another mouse menu program.

Allocating Memory for Mouse Menus

MENU.COM can allocate up to 57 KB of memory for a mouse menu program. Note that the size of MENU.COM [7 KB] plus the size of the MNU file cannot exceed 64 KB. If the menu file is smaller than 6 KB, MENU.COM allocates 6 KB of memory. If the menu file is greater than 6 KB, MENU.COM allocates the exact size of the file.

Every time you start MS-DOS, the size of the first menu file you load determines the amount of memory reserved for other menu files. If you plan to use more than one mouse menu before restarting your system, first load the MNU file that requires the greatest amount of memory so that MENU.COM will allocate enough memory to hold each menu file.

Note that a mouse menu will function correctly only if the application it is working with allows memory-resident programs to run with it. In addition, a mouse menu will not work with an application that intercepts the keyboard interrupt and bypasses the keyboard buffer.

If you type **menu off** to disable a mouse menu, note that the memory allocated by MENU.COM will not be released for use by other programs.

Chapter 4

Mouse Menu Language Statements

This chapter describes in detail each statement used by the mouse menu programming language. Each statement description includes the statement syntax, a description of each parameter, and one or more examples of how to use the statement.

STATEMENT SYNTAX CONVENTIONS

In this book, the following syntax conventions apply for each statement:

- The command word appears in uppercase.
- Labels appear in lowercase italic. A colon (:) and a space must separate each label from the command word.
- Parameters appear in lowercase italic. A comma (,) must separate each parameter from another parameter. If you don't include a parameter, you must include an additional comma where the parameter would have appeared.
- A parameter in brackets ([]) is optional. A parameter that doesn't appear in brackets is required.
- If a parameter appears enclosed in double quotation marks (" "), you must include the double quotation marks when typing the parameter.
- If a parameter appears more than once in a statement, the second occurrence of the parameter is enclosed in brackets and followed by an ellipsis (...).

THE ASSIGN STATEMENT

An ASSIGN statement takes the following format:

```
label: ASSIGN [lfbtn],[rtbtn],[btbtn],[lfmov],[rtmov],
[upmov],[dnmov],[hsen],[vsen]
```

Description

An ASSIGN statement redefines one or more of the mouse parameters in a BEGIN statement or in the most recent ASSIGN statement. If you don't specify a parameter value in an ASSIGN statement, the last parameter value given (in either a BEGIN statement or another ASSIGN statement) is used. Statement labels are the values you use for all parameters except *hsen* and *vsen*.

Parameters

The parameters for an ASSIGN statement are as follows:

Parameter	Description
<i>lfbtn</i>	Label of the first statement to be executed when you press the left-hand mouse button.
<i>rtbtn</i>	Label of the first statement to be executed when you press the right-hand mouse button.
<i>btbtn</i>	Label of the first statement to be executed when you press both mouse buttons at one time.
<i>lfmov</i>	Label of the first statement to be executed when you move the mouse to the left.
<i>rtmov</i>	Label of the first statement to be executed when you move the mouse to the right.
<i>upmov</i>	Label of the first statement to be executed when you move the mouse forward.
<i>dnmov</i>	Label of the first statement to be executed when you move the mouse backward.
<i>hsen</i>	Value of the horizontal movement sensitivity parameter.
<i>vsen</i>	Value of the vertical movement sensitivity parameter.

Example

In the following example, the BEGIN statement assigns initial values to all button and movement parameters. Because values are not specified for the sensitivity parameters (*vsen* and *hsen*), the default values 4 and 8 are used.

The ASSIGN statement changes the values of the left button, right button, and up-and-down movement parameters. It also changes the value of *hsen* to 16 and the value of *vsen* to 18. Commas indicate the values that aren't being changed.

```
BEGIN esc,ent,mm1,lf,rt,up,dn
.
.
.
reassign: ASSIGN y,not,,,not,not,16,18
```

THE BEGIN STATEMENT

A BEGIN statement takes the following format:

```
BEGIN [lfbtn],[rtbtn],[btbtn],[lfmov],[rtmov],
[upmov],[dnmov],[hsen],[vsen]
```

Description

A BEGIN statement defines the actions to be performed when a mouse event occurs.

The parameters for BEGIN define the statements to be executed when you move the mouse or press the mouse buttons. They also define the movement sensitivity for the mouse. All parameters for the BEGIN statement are optional. If you don't provide a value for a mouse button or a mouse movement sensitivity parameter (all parameters except *hsen* and *vsen*), nothing happens when you press a mouse button or move the mouse. If you don't provide a value for *hsen* or *vsen*, the default values 4 and 8 are used. You use statement labels as the values for all parameters except *hsen* and *vsen*.

NOTE: When a mouse menu subroutine (see MENU and POPUP) is executed, the parameters for the BEGIN statement do not affect the mouse functions within that subroutine. You can press either mouse button to choose an item in a menu. All mouse movement functions are active.

The movement sensitivity parameters, *hsen* and *vsen*, control the horizontal and vertical movement sensitivity of the mouse. Movement sensitivity is the distance the mouse must move (measured in mickeys) in order for the on-screen pointer to move. (For more information about the mickey, see Chapter 6, "Mouse Programming Interface.")

Parameters

Because a BEGIN statement is always the first statement in a menu source program, it doesn't require a label. The parameters for the BEGIN statement are as follows:

Parameter	Description
<i>lbtn</i>	Label of the first statement to be executed when you press the left-hand mouse button.
<i>rbtn</i>	Label of the first statement to be executed when you press the right-hand mouse button.
<i>btbtn</i>	Label of the first statement to be executed when you press both mouse buttons at one time.
<i>lfmov</i>	Label of the first statement to be executed when you move the mouse to the left.
<i>rtmov</i>	Label of the first statement to be executed when you move the mouse to the right.
<i>upmov</i>	Label of the first statement to be executed when you move the mouse forward.
<i>dnmov</i>	Label of the first statement to be executed when you move the mouse backward.
<i>hsen</i>	Number from 0 through 32,767 that defines how many mickeys the mouse must move horizontally in order for the on-screen pointer to move. If you specify the value 0, the mouse's horizontal movement is disabled. If you don't specify a value, the default value 4 (mickeys) is used.
<i>usen</i>	Number from 0 through 32,767 that defines how many mickeys the mouse must move vertically in order for the on-screen pointer to move. If you specify the value 0, the mouse's vertical movement is disabled. If you don't specify a value, the default value 8 (mickeys) is used.

Example

The BEGIN statement in this example defines initial values for all parameters except *btbtn*, *hsen*, and *usen*. Because *btbtn* isn't specified, nothing happens when you press both mouse buttons. Because values are not given for *hsen* and *usen*, the default values 4 and 8 (mickeys) are used.

```

BEGIN ent,es,,lf,rt,up,dn
lf: TYPE 0,75 ;Simulates pressing the left-arrow key
rt: TYPE 0,77 ;Simulates pressing the right-arrow key
up: TYPE 0,72 ;Simulates pressing the up-arrow key
dn: TYPE 0,80 ;Simulates pressing the down-arrow key
es: TYPE esc ;Simulates pressing the Esc key
ent: TYPE enter ;Simulates pressing the Enter key

```

THE EXECUTE STATEMENT

An EXECUTE statement takes the following format:

```
label: EXECUTE label [,label ... ]
```

Description

An EXECUTE statement executes specified statements when you perform one of the following defined actions:

- Select a menu and a pop-up item.
- Move the mouse.
- Press one or both mouse buttons.
- Execute a MATCH statement.

Each EXECUTE statement can specify up to 15 other statements to be executed. An EXECUTE statement can also call other EXECUTE statements—you can link up to 15 EXECUTE statements in this manner. Statements within an EXECUTE statement are executed sequentially, beginning with the first statement.

Parameters

The parameters for an EXECUTE statement are as follows:

Parameter	Description
<i>label</i>	Name of the EXECUTE statement. All EXECUTE statements must be labeled.
<i>label</i>	Name(s) of the label(s) to call. Each EXECUTE statement begins with a label. However, you should not use that label as a parameter within that EXECUTE statement or in a nested EXECUTE statement—if you do, you will create an endless loop.

Examples

In this example, the EXECUTE statement labeled *exec4* executes the statements labeled *dir*, *s*, *a*, and *ent*, which simulate typing *dir a:* and then pressing the Enter key.

```

dir:  TYPE "dir"      ;Types the DIR command
s:    TYPE 32        ;Simulates pressing the Spacebar
                        ;TYPE " " can also be used
a:    TYPE "a:"      ;Types a:
ent:  TYPE enter     ;Simulates pressing the Enter key
exec4: EXECUTE dir,s,a,ent

```

In the following example, two EXECUTE statements are nested, and the first EXECUTE statement calls the second. The comments describe the flow of the program when the *exec1* statement is activated.

```

exec1: EXECUTE a,ent  ;Executes statements labeled a and ent
                        ;and then returns to the point from
                        ;which exec1 was called

a:    EXECUTE a1,a2   ;Executes a1 and a2 and then returns to the second
                        ;part of the EXECUTE statement labeled exec1

a1:   TYPE "a"       ;Simulates typing a lowercase a and then returns
                        ;to the middle of the a: statement

a2:   TYPE "AA"      ;Simulates typing uppercase AA and then returns
                        ;to the end of the a: statement

ent:  TYPE enter     ;Simulates pressing the Enter key and then returns to
                        ;the end of the statement labeled exec1

```

The following examples cause infinite loops, which you should avoid creating. EXECUTE statements must not call themselves.

```

bad1: EXECUTE bad1   ;Infinite loop

```

Also, a nested EXECUTE statement must not call any EXECUTE statement that leads to its own activation.

```

bad2: EXECUTE bad3   ;Executes statement labeled bad3
bad3: EXECUTE bad2   ;Infinite loop

```

THE MATCH STATEMENT

A MATCH statement takes the following format:

```
label: MATCH [row],[column],[attribute],"string",match,nomatch
```

Description

A MATCH statement executes other statements or subroutines depending on whether it finds a specified string at a defined screen location. You must provide values for the *row* and *column* parameters in the form of absolute screen coordinates. The starting coordinates for the screen are located at row 1, column 1.

Parameters

The parameters for a MATCH statement are as follows:

Parameter	Description
<i>label</i>	Name of the MATCH statement. All MATCH statements must include labels.
<i>row</i>	Number that specifies the row designation of the first character of the match string. If you do not specify a value, row 1 is assigned.
<i>column</i>	Number that specifies the column designation of the first character of the match string. If you do not specify a value, column 1 is assigned.
<i>attribute</i>	Value that specifies how the match string must appear on the screen for a match to occur. This value can be the normal, bold, or inverse symbolic value, or it can be a decimal value that denotes (equals the sum of) the specific foreground and background colors to be matched. If you leave the <i>attribute</i> parameter blank or give it the value 0, the MATCH statement matches any attribute. See Chapter 3 for more information about the <i>attribute</i> parameter.
<i>string</i>	String you want to match. The string can contain up to 255 ASCII characters. You must specify the <i>string</i> parameter, and you must enclose it in double quotation marks (" ").
<i>match</i>	Label of a statement or a subroutine to be executed if the string is matched. If you don't specify a label, nothing happens when the match is made.
<i>nomatch</i>	Label of a statement or a subroutine to be executed if the string is not matched. If you don't specify a label, nothing happens when the match is not made.

Example

The following example from the WS.DEF mouse menu source program, which is included on the disks in this book, checks whether WordStar is displaying the Beginning menu or the Main menu.

```
BEGIN leftb,rightb,bothb,mousel,mouser,mouseu,moused,16,40
leftb: MATCH 1,12,normal,"e",imen,chk33
chk33: MATCH 1,12,, "n",imen,chk1
chk1:  MATCH 1,11,, ":" ,emen,not
imen:  POPUP 2,1
      .
      .
      .
      PEND
emen:  POPUP 2,1
      .
      .
      .
      PEND
not:   NOTHING
```

When you press the left-hand mouse button, the following occurs:

- The MATCH statement labeled *leftb* looks for an *e* at row 1, column 12. This is the first character in the string *editing no file*, which appears on the screen in that position if WordStar version 3.2 is displaying the Beginning menu. If *leftb* finds the *e* in that position, it executes the statement labeled *imen*. (In WS.DEF, the *imen* statement displays the No-File pop-up menu for WordStar.) If *leftb* doesn't find the *e* in that position, it executes the statement labeled *chk33*.
- The *chk33* statement looks for the letter *n* at row 1, column 12. This is the first character in the string *not editing*, which appears on the screen in that position if WordStar version 3.3 is displaying the Beginning menu. If the *chk33* statement finds the *n* in that position, it executes the statement labeled *imen*. (In WS.DEF, the *imen* statement displays the No-File pop-up menu for WordStar.) If *chk33* doesn't find the *n* in that position, it executes the statement labeled *chk1*.

- The *chkl* statement looks for a colon (:) after the disk drive identifier in the first line of the WordStar main menu display. If *chkl* finds a colon, it executes the statement labeled *emen*. (In WS.DEF, the *emen* statement displays the Edit/Block pop-up menu.) If *chkl* doesn't find a colon, the menu program does nothing.

THE MENU...MEND STATEMENTS

A MENU statement takes the following format:

```
label: MENU ["title"],[row],[column],[attribute]
      .
      .
      .
      MEND
```

Description

A MENU statement is the first statement in a menu subroutine that creates a bordered, single-column pop-up menu. The specific dimensions of a menu are determined by the number of items listed in a menu. The dimensions are also determined by the largest number of characters in the longest menu item or in the menu title.

When the menu is displayed, the first menu item is highlighted. You can choose any menu item by moving the mouse to highlight that item and then pressing either mouse button. If you press both mouse buttons at the same time, the equivalent of a NOTHING statement is executed and the menu disappears. Any movement or button actions defined in a BEGIN or ASSIGN statement are ignored within the MENU subroutine.

Each menu subroutine must include a MEND (menu end) statement, which indicates the end of a menu subroutine. The MEND statement takes no parameters.

NOTE: The MENU statement automatically generates a border around the entire menu and draws a line between the menu title and the menu items.

Parameters

The parameters for a MENU statement are as follows:

Parameter	Description
<i>label</i>	Name of the menu subroutine. All menu subroutines must be labeled.
<i>title</i>	Text of the menu title, enclosed in double quotation marks (" "). The menu title is limited to one line. If you don't specify a title, MENU generates a blank line.
<i>row</i>	Number that specifies the row where the upper left corner of the menu border begins. Be sure to specify a value that displays the entire menu. (For example, if the menu contains 20 items and you choose a row value greater than 5, some of the screen items will not appear on a 25-row screen.) If you don't specify a row number, the upper left corner is assigned row 1.
<i>column</i>	Number that specifies the column where the upper left corner of the menu border begins. If you don't specify a column number, the upper left corner is assigned column 1.
<i>attribute</i>	Value that specifies how the menu is displayed on the screen. This value can be <i>normal</i> , <i>bold</i> , or <i>inverse</i> , or it can be a decimal value that denotes (equals the sum of) the specific foreground and background colors to be matched. (For more information about the <i>attribute</i> parameter, see Chapter 3, "Creating Your Own Mouse Menu.") If you don't specify a value, MENU uses the inverse value. The colors of the mouse pointer depend on the display-attribute value for the menu. For detailed information about how the interaction between the mouse pointer and menu display determines the colors of the pointer, see Chapter 6, "Mouse Programming Interface."

Example

In the following example, the MENU statement contains all four parameters. The menu title is *Display Directory*. The upper left corner of the menu border is located at row 5, column 5. The menu is displayed with a normal screen attribute.

The OPTION statements specify the statements to be executed when you choose items from the menu. (OPTION statements are described in greater detail later in this chapter.)

NOTE: You should always include a provision for closing the menu without causing an action. This example includes a Cancel option that, because it doesn't have a label in the line, executes the equivalent of a NOTHING statement.

```

menu1: MENU    "Display Directory",5,5,normal
        OPTION "Cancel"
        OPTION "a:",ex1
        OPTION "b:",ex2
        OPTION "c:",ex3
        MEND
ex1: EXECUTE dir,s,a,ent ;DIR a:
ex2: EXECUTE dir,s,b,ent ;DIR b:
ex3: EXECUTE dir,s,c,ent ;DIR c:
ent: TYPE enter ;Simulates pressing the Enter key
dir: TYPE "dir" ;Types the DIR command
a: TYPE "a:" ;Types a:
b: TYPE "b:" ;Types b:
c: TYPE "c:" ;Types c:
s: TYPE 32 ;Types a space

```

THE NOTHING STATEMENT

A NOTHING statement takes the following format:

```
label: NOTHING
```

Description

A NOTHING statement specifies that no action occur when you press a mouse button, move the mouse, or choose a menu option. You can also use a NOTHING statement to specify that no action occur when a MATCH statement is executed.

Parameters

A NOTHING statement takes no parameters.

Example

This example from the WS.DEF mouse menu source program, which is included on the disks in this book, determines which pop-up menu is displayed when you press the right-hand mouse button.

The WS.DEF program does the following:

- If the MATCH statement finds the specified character, it executes the statement labeled *movemenu*, which displays the CURSOR MOVEMENT pop-up menu.
- If the MATCH statement doesn't find the specified character, it executes the NOTHING statement, labeled *nul*, and the mouse menu program does nothing.

```
rightb: MATCH 1,11,NORMAL, ":",movemenu,nul
.
.
.
movemenu: POPUP 2,1
TEXT "===== CURSOR MOVEMENT ====="
.
.
.
nul:      NOTHING
```

THE OPTION STATEMENT

An OPTION statement takes the following format:

```
[label:] OPTION [text],[pointer]
```

Description

OPTION statements define each menu item in a menu subroutine by specifying the text of the menu item and the action to be performed when you choose the item.

It's not necessary to label OPTION statements, although you can if you want to. If you do label them, the MAKEMENU program ignores the labels when it compiles the source program.

Parameters

The parameters for an OPTION statement are as follows.

Parameter	Description
<i>text</i>	Text for the menu item. You must enclose the text in double quotation marks (" "). If you don't specify text for a menu item, a blank line is displayed in the menu for that item.
<i>pointer</i>	Label of the statement to be executed when you choose the menu item. If you don't include a <i>pointer</i> parameter, the menu clears from the screen when you choose the menu item. (The equivalent of a NOTHING statement is executed.) For example, you would not include the <i>pointer</i> parameter for a <i>Cancel Menu</i> item.

Example

The following example shows OPTION statements that define four menu items. If you choose the first menu item, the menu disappears from the screen because the OPTION statement doesn't include a *pointer* parameter. If you choose any other menu item, the specified statement is executed.

```

menu5: MENU    "Display Directory",5,5,normal
          OPTION "Cancel"
          OPTION "a:",ex1
          OPTION "b:",ex2
          OPTION "c:",ex3
          MEND
ex1: EXECUTE dir,s,a,ent ;DIR a:
ex2: EXECUTE dir,s,b,ent ;DIR b:
ex3: EXECUTE dir,s,c,ent ;DIR c:
ent: TYPE enter ;Simulates pressing the Enter key
dir: TYPE "dir" ;Types the DIR command
a: TYPE "a:" ;Types a:
b: TYPE "b:" ;Types b:
c: TYPE "c:" ;Types c:
s: TYPE 32 ;Types a space

```

THE POPUP...PEND STATEMENTS

A POPUP statement takes the following format:

```

label: POPUP [row],[column],[attribute]
      .
      .
      .
      PEND

```


Description

A POPUP statement is the first statement in a pop-up subroutine that creates a multiple-column menu or a message box.

Each pop-up subroutine must include a PEND (pop-up end) statement, which indicates the end of a pop-up subroutine.

Parameters

The parameters for a POPUP statement are as follows:

Parameter	Description
<i>label</i>	Name of the pop-up subroutine. All POPUP statements must be labeled. Do not label the PEND statement.
<i>row</i>	Number that specifies the row where the upper left corner of the first row of the menu or message box begins. Be sure to specify a value that displays the entire menu or message box. (For example, if the menu or message box contains 20 lines and you choose a row value greater than 5, some of the screen items will not appear on the 25-row screen.) If you don't specify a row number, the upper left corner is assigned row 1. (Note: Subsequent menu items in a pop-up menu are created with a TEXT statement.)
<i>column</i>	Number that specifies the column where the upper left corner of the menu or message box begins. If you don't specify a column number, the upper left corner is assigned column 1.
<i>attribute</i>	Value that specifies how the menu is displayed on the screen. This value can be <i>normal</i> , <i>bold</i> , or <i>inverse</i> , or it can be a decimal value that denotes (equals the sum of) the specific foreground and background colors to be matched. (For more information about the <i>attribute</i> parameter, see Chapter 3, "Creating Your Own Mouse Menu.") If you don't specify a value, POPUP uses the inverse value. The colors of the mouse pointer depend on the display-attribute value for the menu. For detailed information about how the interaction between the mouse pointer and menu display determines the colors of the pointer, see Chapter 6, "Mouse Programming Interface."

NOTE: Unlike the MENU statement, which generates a border around the entire menu and draws a line between the menu title and the menu items, a POPUP statement doesn't draw any lines. You must, therefore, include line-drawing characters within the TEXT statements that are part of the pop-up subroutine. The easiest characters to use are the equal sign (=) or the minus sign (-) for creating horizontal lines, the pipe character (|) for creating vertical lines, and the plus sign (+) for forming the corners. You can also use the extended ASCII line-drawing characters, which are listed in Appendix A, "ASCII Character Set."

In addition, a POPUP statement provides a greater degree of control for defining menu choices than does a MENU statement. Your pop-up subroutine must include SELECT statements to select and act upon the menu choices presented by TEXT statements.

Examples

The following example creates a simple pop-up menu. When you press the left-hand mouse button, the pop-up menu lets you select one of two MS-DOS commands. The POPUP statement defines the location of the upper left corner of the menu as row 5, column 20. The menu border is created by using plus signs (+), pipes (|), and equal signs (=). The second line of the menu displays the title. In addition, the three menu items in lines 4 and 5 are defined by the three SELECT statements in lines 7 through 9. SELECT statements are discussed in further detail later in this chapter.

```
BEGIN leftb

leftb: POPUP 5,20,inverse
      TEXT "+=====+"
      TEXT "| POPUP - DOS helper |"
      TEXT "+-----+"
      TEXT "|   CLS   DIR   |"
      TEXT "|   Exit POPUP menu |"
      TEXT "+=====+"
      SELECT 5,4,17
      SELECT 4,6,5,cls
      SELECT 4,14,5,dir
      PEND

cls:  TYPE "cls",enter
dir:  TYPE "dir",enter
```

The following example from the WS.DEF mouse menu source program, which is included on the disks in this book, is a pop-up subroutine that produces a message box.

ASCII graphics characters create solid double borders around the menu. Also, the single SELECT statement clears the message box from the screen because it does not include a *pointer* parameter. Therefore, pressing either mouse button clears the message box from the screen.

```
mousehlp: POPUP 2,1
TEXT " ===== MOUSE HELP ===== "
TEXT ";                                     ;"
TEXT "; Left button - Displays Edit/Block menu ;"
TEXT "; Right button - Displays Cursor Movement menu ;"
TEXT "; Both buttons - Display Edit/File menu ;"
TEXT ";                                     ;"
TEXT "; Moving the mouse up, down, left, or right ;"
TEXT "; causes the cursor to move in that direction ;"
TEXT ";                                     ;"
TEXT " ===== "
SELECT 1,18,10
PEND
```

THE SELECT STATEMENT

A SELECT statement takes the following format:

```
SELECT row,column,length[,pointer]
```

Description

A SELECT statement in pop-up subroutines defines the size of selection areas for items appearing on the menu. It also specifies the statement to be executed if the cursor is moved to the defined area. It is not necessary for the defined area to contain text.

NOTE: The highlight in a menu or message box moves from one defined selection area to another when you move the mouse. It's a good idea to define each part of a menu with a SELECT statement so that the movement of the highlight and the movement of the mouse are visually coordinated; however, be sure you don't define the same screen position with more than one SELECT statement.

Parameters

The parameters for a SELECT statement are as follows:

Parameter	Description
<i>row</i>	Number that defines the horizontal starting point (row) of the item selection area relative to the <i>row</i> and <i>column</i> coordinates you specified in the POPUP statement.
<i>column</i>	Number that defines the vertical starting point (column) of the item selection area relative to the <i>row</i> and <i>column</i> coordinates you specified in the POPUP statement.
<i>length</i>	Number of characters in the item selection area. If you don't specify a number, the SELECT statement assumes one character.
<i>pointer</i>	Label of the statement executed when you choose the defined menu item. If you don't include a <i>pointer</i> parameter, the menu disappears from the screen. (You can press either button to select the item; however, if you press both buttons, the item is not selected and a NOTHING statement is executed.)

Example

The SELECT statements in the following example let you select *CLS* to clear the screen, *DIR* to display a directory listing, or *Exit pop-up menu* to clear the menu from the screen.

Notice that the first SELECT statement in a pop-up subroutine defines which selection will be highlighted when the menu appears.

```

BEGIN leftb

leftb: POPUP 5,20,inverse
      TEXT "+=====+"
      TEXT "| POPUP - DOS helper |"
      TEXT "+-----+"
      TEXT "|   CLS   DIR   |"
      TEXT "| Exit pop-up menu |"
      TEXT "+=====+"
      SELECT 5,4,17
      SELECT 4,6,5,cls
      SELECT 4,14,5,dir
      PEND
cls:  TYPE "cls",enter
dir:  TYPE "dir",enter

```

THE TEXT STATEMENT

A TEXT statement takes the following format:

```
TEXT "string"
```

Description

A TEXT statement in a pop-up subroutine defines the menu title, the text for menu items, and the characters used to draw lines and borders. Its purpose is similar to that of the *title* and *text* parameters in the MENU and OPTION statements, but it lets you position text anywhere on the screen (as long as the text appears below and to the right of the upper left corner of the pop-up menu).

Parameter

The parameter for a TEXT statement is as follows:

Parameter	Description
<i>string</i>	The pop-up menu title or the text of a menu item. Text can include ASCII graphics characters for lines and borders and must be enclosed in double quotation marks (" "). The location of text on the screen is relative to the upper left corner position set by the POPUP statement. Also, text display attributes are determined by the <i>attribute</i> parameter in the POPUP statement.

Example

The TEXT statements in the following example define the appearance of the pop-up menu. The statements completely define the borders, title, and all menu selections.

```

BEGIN leftb

leftb: POPUP 5,20,inverse
      TEXT "+-----+"
      TEXT ": POPUP - DOS helper :)"
      TEXT "+-----+"
      TEXT ":   CLS   DIR   :)"
      TEXT ":   Exit pop-up menu :)"
      TEXT "+-----+"
      SELECT 5,4,17
      SELECT 4,6,5,cls
      SELECT 4,14,5,dir
      PEND

cls:   TYPE "cls",enter
dir:   TYPE "dir",enter

```

THE TYPE STATEMENT

A TYPE statement takes the following format:

```
label: TYPE key [,key...]
```

Description

A TYPE statement simulates typing one or more keys.

NOTE: All keys you specify in a TYPE statement are read into the DOS keyboard buffer at the time the TYPE statement is executed. When the menu program finishes processing the mouse event (executes the BEGIN statement), the application resumes and finds the keystrokes in the DOS buffer as if they had been typed.

Parameters

The parameters for a TYPE statement are as follows:

Parameter	Description
<i>label</i>	Name of the TYPE statement. Every TYPE statement must be labeled.
<i>key</i>	Name of the key.

The name of the key can take any of the following forms:

- One or more letters or numbers enclosed in double quotation marks (for example, "X" or "dir").
- A standard ASCII code (characters 0 through 127) or an extended ASCII code (characters 128 through 255). The ASCII control characters (0 through 31) that you can use with the TYPE statement are listed in Appendix A, "ASCII Character Set."
- An extended-keyboard code. (Appendix A, "ASCII Character Set," lists them.)
- Any of the following predefined symbolic keys: Enter, Tab, Backsp, Esc.

NOTE: To simulate typing a double quotation mark ("), use ASCII code 34.

Examples

The following TYPE statements use character strings to define the keys:

```
dir:  TYPE "dir"  ;Types the DIR command
a:    TYPE "a:"   ;Types a:
```

The following TYPE statement uses an ASCII code to simulate typing a space:

```
s:    TYPE 32     ;Types a space
```

The following TYPE statements use extended-keyboard codes that simulate the arrow keys:

```
lf:   TYPE 0,75   ;Simulates pressing the left-arrow key
rt:   TYPE 0,77   ;Simulates pressing the right-arrow key
up:   TYPE 0,72   ;Simulates pressing the up-arrow key
dn:   TYPE 0,80   ;Simulates pressing the down-arrow key
```

Key Sequences That Can't Be Simulated

Some key sequences can't be simulated by using the TYPE command because they are suppressed in the ROM (Read-Only Memory) BIOS (Basic Input/Output System) keyboard routine. See Appendix A, "ASCII Character Set," for a complete listing.

Chapter 5

Sample Mouse Menu Programs

This chapter discusses the source program listings for two mouse menu programs that simplify some tasks commonly performed on an IBM personal computer or compatible.

Use your word processor or text editor to create the source program for the mouse menus, run the MAKEMENU utility to generate a mouse menu program, and then begin using the mouse menu program immediately. You can also use these listings as a basis for designing similar mouse menus that include features specific to your needs.

THE SIMPLE MOUSE MENU PROGRAM

The SIMPLE mouse menu program lets you use the mouse instead of pressing commonly used keys. It is most helpful when used with applications that require frequent pressing of the direction keys. For example, in many spreadsheet applications you must press the direction keys to move the cursor. If the SIMPLE mouse menu is installed, you can move the cursor by simply moving the mouse. Pressing the left-hand mouse button simulates pressing the Enter key; pressing the right-hand mouse button simulates pressing the Esc key; and pressing both buttons at one time is equivalent to pressing the Ins key. If your application doesn't use one of these keys and you press the corresponding mouse button by accident, the application responds as if you had pressed the key. You can then correct the mistake as you would correct any typing error.

The source program for the SIMPLE mouse menu follows:

```

; A menu that simulates direction, Enter, Esc,
; and Ins keys
;
;
BEGIN ent,es,ins,lf,rt,up,dn,32,16
;
ent:  TYPE enter      ; Enter key
es:   TYPE esc        ; Esc key
ins:  TYPE 0,82       ; Ins key
;
lf:   TYPE 0,75       ; Left-arrow key
rt:   TYPE 0,77       ; Right-arrow key
up:   TYPE 0,72       ; Up-arrow key
dn:   TYPE 0,80       ; Down-arrow key

```

THE DOSOVRLY MOUSE MENU PROGRAM

The DOSOVRLY (DOS overlay) mouse menu lets you choose several MS-DOS commands at the MS-DOS command level by pointing to a menu option and pressing either mouse button. In other words, this mouse menu “overlays” MS-DOS.

In addition to a main menu, the DOSOVRLY mouse menu program has two submenus—Directory and Change Directory—which list additional MS-DOS commands. The source listing for DOSOVRLY is a good example of how to create a hierarchy of menus and submenus in one of your own mouse menu programs.

The DOSOVRLY mouse menu program provides several features that are useful at the MS-DOS command level:

- Moving the mouse to the left and right simulates pressing the left-arrow and right-arrow keys, a feature that lets you edit your MS-DOS commands by simply moving the mouse.
- Pressing the right-hand mouse button simulates pressing the Enter key.
- Pressing both mouse buttons at one time simulates typing CLS, the MS-DOS command for clearing the screen.
- Pressing the left-hand mouse button displays the DOSOVRLY main menu. Options on this menu let you clear the screen, execute the MS-DOS DATE or TIME command, or choose the

Directory or Change Directory submenu. To choose a menu option, move the mouse to highlight the option and then press either mouse button. From within a submenu, you can choose an option to move to the other submenu or to return to the main menu.

NOTE: In the DOSOVRLY source program, the lb, rb, bb, lm, and rm parameters specified in the BEGIN statement are labels for EXECUTE statements. These EXECUTE statements branch to the appropriate MENU or TYPE statements.

If you want to simplify the following program, branch directly from the BEGIN statement to the *mnu1* menu subroutine and to the TYPE statements by using the following statement:

```
BEGIN mnu1,ent,cls,left,right
```

The source program for the DOSOVRLY mouse menu follows:

```
BEGIN lb,rb,bb,lm,rm
lb: EXECUTE mnu1 ; Select Main Menu if left button
rb: EXECUTE ent ; Type Enter if right button
bb: EXECUTE cls ; Type CLS command if both buttons
lm: EXECUTE left ; Press left-arrow key if left motion
rm: EXECUTE right ; Press right-arrow key if right motion
;
mnu1: MENU "Main Menu",2,55,NORMAL
      OPTION "cancel" ; none
      OPTION "clear the screen" ; cls
      OPTION "date" ; date
      OPTION "time" ; time
      OPTION "Directory" ; mnu3
      OPTION "Change Directory" ; mnu2
      MEND
;
mnu2: MENU "Change Directory",2,55,NORMAL
      OPTION "cancel" ; none
      OPTION "cd .." ; cd1
      OPTION "cd" ; cd2
      OPTION "Directory" ; mnu3
      OPTION "Main menu" ; mnu1
      MEND
;
mnu3: MENU "Directory",2,55,NORMAL
      OPTION "cancel" ; none
```

(continued)

continued

```

OPTION "dir"           ",dir
OPTION "dir *.exe"    ",dire
OPTION "dir *.bat"    ",dirb
OPTION "dir *.bak"    ",dirx
OPTION "dir *.sys"    ",dirs
OPTION "dir *.doc"    ",dird
OPTION "dir *."       ",dirz
OPTION "Change Directory" ",mnu2
OPTION "Main menu"    ",mnu1
MEND

;
none:      NOTHING      ; Do nothing
;
ent:       TYPE enter
cls:       TYPE "cls",enter
left:      TYPE 0,75      ; Left-arrow key
right:     TYPE 0,77     ; Right-arrow key
date:      TYPE "date",enter
time:      TYPE "time",enter
cd1:       TYPE "cd ..",enter
cd2:       TYPE "cd "
dir:       TYPE "dir",enter
dire:      TYPE "dir *.exe",enter
dirb:      TYPE "dir *.bat",enter
dirx:      TYPE "dir *.bak",enter
dirs:      TYPE "dir *.sys",enter
dird:      TYPE "dir *.doc",enter
dirz:      TYPE "dir *."

```

OTHER SAMPLE MOUSE MENU PROGRAMS

The disks that accompany this book contain 11 sample mouse menu programs, which you can recognize by the DEF filename extension. Of the 11 DEF files, 5 are demonstration programs and 6 are fully operational mouse menu programs designed for use with early versions of IBM Multiplan, Microsoft Multiplan, Symphony, VisiCalc, WordStar, and BRIEF. These files are located in the \MENU directory on disk 2.

Demonstration Programs

The five demonstration programs on the disks are designed to show various elements of mouse menu programming. The source files for these programs are COLOR.DEF, DROP.DEF, EXECUTE1.DEF,

EXECUTE2.DEF, and KBD.DEF. Each contains comments that explain how the demonstration program works. For an overview of each demonstration program, read the following sections.

The COLOR Program

The COLOR program displays a menu of all possible color choices for mouse menus:

QUIT																														
000	016	032	048	064	080	096	112	128	144	160	176	192	208	224	240															
001	017	033	049	065	081	097	113	129	145	161	177	193	209	225	241															
002	018	034	050	066	082	098	114	130	146	162	178	194	210	226	242															
003	019	035	051	067	083	099	115	131	147	163	179	195	211	227	243															
004	020	036	052	068	084	100	116	132	148	164	180	196	212	228	244															
005	021	037	053	069	085	101	117	133	149	165	181	197	213	229	245															
006	022	038	054	070	086	102	118	134	150	166	182	198	214	230	246															
007	023	039	055	071	087	103	119	135	151	167	183	199	215	231	247															
008	024	040	056	072	088	104	120	136	152	168	184	200	216	232	248															
009	025	041	057	073	089	105	121	137	153	169	185	201	217	233	249															
010	026	042	058	074	090	106	122	138	154	170	186	202	218	234	250															
011	027	043	059	075	091	107	123	139	155	171	187	203	219	235	251															
012	028	044	060	076	092	108	124	140	156	172	188	204	220	236	252															
013	029	045	061	077	093	109	125	141	157	173	189	205	221	237	253															
014	030	046	062	078	094	110	126	142	158	174	190	206	222	238	254															
015	031	047	063	079	095	111	127	143	159	175	191	207	223	239	255															

The numbers in the menu are the sums of the various foreground and background color combinations listed in Figure 3-3 in Chapter 3. The COLOR program can help you choose color combinations for MENU or POPUP statements.

The DROP Program

The DROP program demonstrates how you can create drop-down menus. When you run the program and press the left-hand mouse button, the following main menu appears:

CLR SCRIN	LIST DIR	CH DRIVE
-----------	----------	----------

If you choose the menu item CLR SCRIN, the DROP program clears the screen and causes the main menu to disappear. If you choose the menu item LIST DIR, a second pop-up menu appears in place of the main menu, giving the appearance of a drop-down menu:

CLR SCRIN	LIST DIR	CH DRIVE
	dir	
	*.bat	
	*.com	
	*.doc	
	*.exe	
	*.sys	
	CANCEL	

The selection rectangle's movement is restricted to the items within the newly displayed column, letting you list a directory of the current drive in one of several ways.

If you choose the menu item CH DRIVE, a third pop-up menu appears in place of the main menu. Like the second menu, the third menu also gives the appearance of a menu "pulled down" from the menu bar.

CLR SCR	LIST DIR	CH DRIVE
		A: B: C: CANCEL

The EXECUTE1 Program

The EXECUTE1 demonstration program is designed to show how the EXECUTE mouse menu command functions.

When you press the left-hand mouse button, a menu displaying a single option appears on the screen. The option leads to a second menu, and then the screen clears. Although the string `cls <enter>` is sent to the keyboard buffer before the second menu is displayed, the screen doesn't clear until after the second menu disappears because the contents of the keyboard buffer are not processed until the mouse menu returns control to MS-DOS.

The EXECUTE2 Program

The EXECUTE2 demonstration program is designed to show how to create a multilevel menu.

The program relies on mouse-event trapping to determine whether or not a second menu is displayed. When you press the left-hand mouse button, a menu is displayed in the upper right corner of your screen. If you press either mouse button, the program clears the screen and the menu disappears. If you press both buttons at the same time, the menu disappears and the program does not clear the screen. If, however, you move the mouse horizontally after pressing the left or right mouse button, a second menu is displayed. The horizontal mouse movement is the event trapped by the mouse menu program: Unless it detects horizontal mouse movement, the mouse menu program will not display the second menu.

NOTE: The EXECUTE2 program is well commented; it's a good idea to read the source program before you compile and run the program.

The KBD Program

The KBD program is designed to provide partial keyboard emulation with the mouse. Most but not all of the keystrokes that the mouse can emulate are included in the program.

When you press a mouse button, the following pop-up menu appears:

quit	Ctrl	Symb	Enter	Ins	Del										
0	A	B	C	D	E	F	G	H	I	J	K	L	M	N	O
1	Q	R	S	T	U	V	W	X	Y	Z	[\	^]	~
2	a	b	c	d	e	f	g	h	i	j	k	l	m	n	o
3	p	q	r	s	t	u	v	w	x	y	z	{	|	}	.
spacebar														BS	
4	↑	#	\$	%	&	'	(*	+	=	-	.	/		
5	0	1	2	3	4	5	6	7	8	9	:	<	>	?	
6	h	↑	p		f1	f2	f3	f4	f5						
7	←	.	▶		f6	f8	f8	f9	f10						
8	e	↓	d												

To type a character, move the mouse pointer to that character and click the left-hand mouse button. The KBD program then sends that character to the keyboard buffer. A second click reactivates the menu. To close the menu and instruct the KBD program to act on the “key-strokes” you sent to the keyboard buffer, click on the Enter box at the top of the menu.

Alternatively, you can click on the Ctrl box at the top of the menu, which causes the following menu to appear:

quit	Kybd	Symb
0	NUL DLE	10
1	SOH DC1	11
2	STX DC2	12
3	ETX DC3	13
4	EDT DC4	14
5	ENQ NAK	15
6	ACK SYN	16
7	BEL ETB	17
8	BS CAN	18
9	HT EM	19
A	LF SUB	1A
B	VT ESC	1B
C	FF FS	1C
D	CR GS	1D
E	SO RS	1E
F	SI US	1F

Clicking on one of the characters in the menu causes the KBD program to send that character to the keyboard buffer. You can also click on the Quit option to return to the MS-DOS prompt, or you can click on the

Kybd option to return to the first menu. Note that this second menu has no Enter option. To choose Enter, you must return to the first menu and choose the Enter option, or you can click on the Symb option and then choose the Enter option.

Clicking on the Symb option in either the first or second menu causes the following menu to appear:

quit	Keyboard				Control				Enter		
ç	ü	é	à	ä	ó	ê	è	ì	í	ñ	ã
é	æ	é	ð	ö	ù	é	é	ü	ü	æ	f
á	í	ó	á	ñ	ñ	á	ü	ü	ü	ü	ü
α	β	γ	π	σ	τ	θ	θ	θ	θ	θ	θ
≡	ε	λ	ς	ι	μ	ζ	ζ	ζ	ζ	ζ	ζ

Double-clicking on one of the characters in this menu causes the KBD program to send that character to the keyboard buffer and then redisplay the menu. You can then choose the Enter option, which clears this menu and causes the KBD program to act on the keystrokes you sent to the keyboard buffer. You can also choose the Keyboard option to activate the first menu, or you can choose the Control option to activate the second menu.

Application Mouse Menus

The six mouse menu programs on the disks are designed to work with earlier versions of six applications that didn't offer mouse support. The following table lists the names of the source files and the application programs for which they are designed:

Source File	Application Program
MPIBM.DEF	Multiplan (IBM)
MPMS.DEF	Multiplan (Microsoft)
SYM.DEF	Symphony
VC.DEF	VisiCalc
WS.DEF	WordStar
BRIEF.DEF	BRIEF

To create a compiled mouse menu program, use the MAKEMENU utility. To load and start the mouse menu program, use the MENU program.

PART III

Mouse Programming Interface

Chapter 6: Mouse Programming Interface

- **Video Adapters and Displays**
- **The Virtual Screen**
- **Graphics and Text Cursors**
- **The Internal Cursor Flag**
- **Reading the Mouse**
- **Calling Mouse Functions**
- **Passing Buffer Pointers**
- **Testing for Installed Mouse**

Chapter 7: Mouse Programming Considerations

- **Setting Up Your System**
- **Advanced Topics**
- **Mouse Functions**

Chapter 8: Mouse Function Calls

- **Introduction to Mouse Functions**
- **Mouse Functions**

Chapter 9: Sample Mouse Programming Interface Programs

- **Interpreted Basic Programs**
- **QuickBasic Programs**
- **C and QuickC Programs**
- **MASM Programs**
- **FORTRAN Programs**
- **Pascal Programs**

Chapter 10: Writing Mouse Programs for IBM EGA Modes

- **The EGA Register Interface Library**
- **EGA Register Interface Functions**



Chapter 6

Mouse Programming Interface

This chapter covers the interface issues you must consider when programming for the mouse: how your particular display adapter affects the type of cursor displayed, how your program must manipulate the cursor, and how your program can access information about mouse activities. It presents information you will need in order to provide the appropriate mouse support in your program—such as information about the difference between text mode and graphics mode and between text cursors and graphics cursors. This chapter also discusses the concept of a virtual screen—an important tool for ensuring that the mouse driver interacts properly with the video display.

VIDEO ADAPTERS AND DISPLAYS

The IBM family of personal computers offers many types of video adapters and video displays. Each computer's unique display capabilities and characteristics affect how the mouse cursor appears and moves on the screen.

Screen Modes

The screen mode defines the number of pixels and the types of objects that appear on the screen. A pixel is a point of light or a block of light made up of individual points. The screen modes available to you depend on the type of video adapter installed in your computer. Some adapters display both points of light and blocks of light; others display only blocks of light.

The screen modes and the video adapters that support them are listed in Figure 6-1.

NOTE: For Hercules Monochrome Graphics Cards, the current convention is to use screen mode 5 for page 1 and screen mode 6 for page 0. See Appendix F, "Using the Mouse with the Hercules Graphics Card," for more information.

Text Mode vs. Graphics Mode

Some adapters display only text mode, and others display both text mode and graphics mode. The modes have their own characteristics but share similar programming considerations for the mouse.

In graphics mode, you can access individual points of light. Some graphics modes display these points in only one color; other graphics modes offer a choice of colors.

In text mode, you can access only character-cell-size blocks of light made up of individual points. Common text modes on IBM PCs offer screen sizes of 80 columns by 25 rows or 40 columns by 25 rows. Text mode uses less memory and is generally faster than graphics mode. However, color combinations in text mode apply to entire character cells rather than to individual points within each character cell, and all graphics created in text mode must consist of ASCII characters.

Testing for Screen Modes

Suppose you want to write programs that can run on a variety of machines. Because you don't know what types of video adapters are installed in the other machines, and because your program might use graphics or color, your program must test each video adapter to check that the desired screen modes are available. In addition, your program should be able to compensate if only text mode is available.

Screen Mode (Hex)	Display Adapter	Text/ Graphics	Virtual Screen (x, y)	Cell Size	Bits per Pixel
0	CGA, EGA, MCGA, VGA, 3270	Text	640 x 00	16 x 8	-
1	CGA, EGA, MCGA, VGA, 3270, 16-color, 40 x 25	Text	640 x 200	16 x 8	-
2	CGA, EGA, MCGA, VGA, 3270, 16-color, 80 x 25	Text	640 x 200	8 x 8	-
3	CGA, EGA, MCGA, VGA, 3270, 16-color, 80 x 25	Text	640 x 200	8 x 8	-
4	CGA, EGA, MCGA, VGA, 3270, 4-color, 320 x 200	Graphics	640 x 200	2 x 1	2
5	CGA, EGA, MCGA, VGA, 3270, 4-color, 320 x 200	Graphics	640 x 200	2 x 1	2
6	CGA, EGA, MCGA, VGA, 3270, 2-color, 640 x 200	Graphics	640 x 200	1 x 1	2
7	CGA, EGA, MCGA, VGA, 3270, MDA, 80 x 25	Text	640 x 200	8 x 8	-
8	16-color, 160 x 200 (PCjr only)	Graphics	640 x 200	4 x 1	4
9	16-color, 320 x 200 (PCjr only)	Graphics	1280 x 200	1 x 1	1
A	4-color, 640 x 200 (PCjr only)	Graphics	640 x 200	1 x 1	1
D	EGA, VGA, 16-color, 320 x 200	Graphics	640 x 200	2 x 1	2
E	EGA, VGA, 16-color, 640 x 200	Graphics	640 x 200	1 x 1	1
F	EGA, VGA, MDA, 640 x 350	Graphics	640 x 350	1 x 1	1

MDA = Monochrome Display Adapter

CGA = Color/Graphics Adapter

EGA = Enhanced Graphics Adapter

MCGA = Multi-Color Graphics Array

VGA = Video Graphics Array

XGA = Extended Graphics Array

3270 = IBM 3270 All-Points-Addressable Graphics Adapter

(continued)

Figure 6-1. Screen-mode characteristics of the IBM PC family of video-display adapters.

Figure 6-1. *continued*

Screen Mode (Hex)	Display Adapter	Text/ Graphics	Virtual Screen (x, y)	Cell Size	Bits per Pixel
10	EGA, VGA, 16-color, 640 x 350	Graphics	640 x 350	1 x 1	1
11	MCGA, VGA, 2-color, 640 x 480	Graphics	640 x 480	1 x 1	1
12	VGA, 16-color, 640 x 480	Graphics	640 x 480	1 x 1	1
13	MCGA, VGA, 256-color, 320 x 200	Graphics	640 x 200	2 x 1	2
20	16-color, 40 x 25	Text	640 x 200	4 x 1	-
21	Hercules page 0, 2-color, 720 x 348	Graphics	720 x 348	1 x 1	1
22	Hercules page 1, 2-color, 720 x 348	Graphics	720 x 348	1 x 1	1
23	Genius VHR, 2-color, 728 x 1008	Graphics	728 x 1008	1 x 1	1
24	HP Vectra	Graphics	640 x 400	1 x 1	1
25	IBM 8514, XGA, 16-color, 1024 x 768	Graphics	1024 x 768	1 x 1	1
26	Genius, 66-line mode	Text	640 x 528	8 x 8	-
30	PC 3270	Graphics	720 x 350	1 x 1	1
40	Olivetti, 16-color, 640 x 400	Graphics	640 x 400	1 x 1	1
40	Video7, 16-color, 80 x 42	Text	640 x 400	1 x 1	-
41	Video7, 16-color, 132 x 25	Text	1056 x 344	1 x 1	-
42	Video7, 16-color, 132 x 43	Text	1056 x 344	1 x 1	-
43	Video7, 16-color, 80 x 60	Text	640 x 480	1 x 1	-
44	Video7, 16-color, 100 x 60	Text	800 x 480	1 x 1	-
45	Video7, 16-color, 132 x 28	Text	1056 x 392	1 x 1	-
60	Sprite, 132 x 25	Text	1056 x 200	8 x 8	-
60	Video7, 16-color, 752 x 410	Graphics	752 x 408	1 x 1	1
61	Sprite, 132 x 50	Text	1056 x 400	8 x 8	-
61	Video7, 16-color, 720 x 540	Graphics	720 x 536	1 x 1	1
62	Video7, 16-color, 800 x 600	Graphics	800 x 600	1 x 1	1
6E	Sprite, 16-color, 720 x 540	Graphics	720 x 540	1 x 1	1

(continued)

Figure 6-1. *continued*

Screen Mode (Hex)	Display Adapter	Text/ Graphics	Virtual Screen (x, y)	Cell Size	Bits per Pixel
6F	Sprite, 16-color, 768 x 576	Graphics	768 x 576	1 x 1	1
70	Sprite, 16-color, 800 x 600	Graphics	800 x 600	1 x 1	1
71	Sprite, 16-color, 960 x 720	Graphics	960 x 720	1 x 1	1
72	Sprite, 16-color, 1024 x 768	Graphics	1024 x 768	1 x 1	1
74	Toshiba T2100/T3100, 16-shade gray, 640 x 400	Graphics	640 x 400	4 x 1	4
78	Sprite, 256-color, 640 x 400	Graphics	640 x 400	1 x 1	1
79	Sprite, 256-color, 640 x 480	Graphics	640 x 480	1 x 1	1
7A	Sprite, 256-color, 720 x 540	Graphics	720 x 540	1 x 1	1
7B	Sprite, 256-color, 768 x 576	Graphics	768 x 576	1 x 1	1
7E	Ericsson	Graphics	640 x 400	1 x 1	1

In C programming, the `_setvideomode` function returns a value that lets you check availability of specified video modes. The following program demonstrates this by attempting to set a medium-resolution graphics mode with as many colors as possible.

```

/*
 * SETVID.C
 * Short QuickC program that sets a graphics video
 * mode based on the available graphics adapter.
 *
 * Program list: setvid
 */
#include <stdio.h>
#include <graph.h>

main()
{
    if (_setvideomode(_MRES256COLOR))
        printf("VGA medium resolution, 256 colors\n");
    else if (_setvideomode(_MRES16COLOR))
        printf("EGA medium resolution, 16 colors\n");
}

```

(continued)

continued

```

else if (_setvideomode(_MRES4COLOR))
    printf("CGA medium resolution, 4 colors\n");
else
    printf("No medium-resolution graphics mode available\n");
}

```

In QuickBasic, you can use the ON ERROR statement to test for valid video modes and available video adapters. The SETVID.BAS program demonstrates one way to do this:

```

' SETVID.BAS
' Short QuickBasic program that sets a graphics video
' mode based on the available graphics adapter.

ON ERROR GOTO ErrorTrap

' Try VGA medium resolution, 256 colors
videoMode = 13
SCREEN videoMode

' Try EGA medium resolution, 16 colors
IF videoMode = 0 THEN
    videoMode = 7
    SCREEN videoMode
END IF

' Try CGA medium resolution, 4 colors
IF videoMode = 0 THEN
    videoMode = 1
    SCREEN videoMode
END IF

' Clear the error trapping
ON ERROR GOTO 0

' Did we find a valid video mode?
IF videoMode THEN
    PRINT "Video mode number"; videoMode
ELSE
    PRINT "No medium-resolution graphics mode available"
END IF

```

(continued)

```
' All done
END
```

```
ErrorTrap:
  videoMode = 0
  RESUME NEXT
```

Following is a similar program in interpreted Basic. Notice that BASICA might not support all available modes.

```
100 ' Short BASICA program that sets a graphics video
110 ' mode based on the available graphics adapter.
120 '
130 ON ERROR GOTO 270
140 VIDEOMODE = 13
150 SCREEN VIDEOMODE
160 IF VIDEOMODE THEN GOTO 230
170 VIDEOMODE = 7
180 SCREEN VIDEOMODE
190 IF VIDEOMODE THEN GOTO 230
200 VIDEOMODE = 1
210 SCREEN VIDEOMODE
220 '
230 IF VIDEOMODE THEN PRINT "Video mode number"; VIDEOMODE
240 IF VIDEOMODE = 0 THEN PRINT "No medium-resolution mode available"
250 END
260 '
270 VIDEOMODE = 0
280 RESUME NEXT
```

THE VIRTUAL SCREEN

To understand how the mouse interacts with the normal display of your program, you must understand the concept of a virtual screen. A virtual screen simplifies programming for the screen resolutions available with the various video adapters. A virtual screen can be thought of as a grid that overlays the physical screen. As a programmer, you need to work only with the grid coordinates on the virtual screen. The mouse software translates the virtual-screen coordinates into the physical-screen coordinates for the current screen mode.

The mouse software interacts with the computer screen as if it were a virtual screen composed of a matrix of horizontal and vertical points. In Figure 6-1, the Virtual Screen column shows the number of horizontal and vertical points in the matrix for each screen mode.

NOTE: The minimum size of a virtual screen is 640 pixels by 200 pixels.

Notice that most text and graphics modes have virtual-screen dimensions of 640 by 200 pixels. This standard often simplifies the task of programming the mouse in several graphics modes.

You can set or change the screen mode by issuing an Interrupt 10H instruction, which invokes a built-in routine in the computer's ROM BIOS. When issuing an Interrupt 10H, you must specify a function number and (optionally) a subfunction number that indicate the work you want Interrupt 10H to perform.

Whenever your program calls Interrupt 10H to change the screen mode, the mouse software intercepts the call and determines which virtual screen to use. The mouse software also reads the screen mode and chooses the appropriate virtual screen whenever your program calls Mouse Function 0 (Mouse Reset and Status) to reset default parameter values in the mouse software.

In the following C program, the mouse driver intercepts Interrupt 10H during the second call to the `_setvideomode` function and then hides the mouse cursor. The mouse cursor reappears after you press a key.

```
#include <stdio.h>
#include <graph.h>
#include <dos.h>

void mouse(int *, int *, int *, int *);

main()
{
    int m1,m2,m3,m4;

    if (_setvideomode(_MRES256COLOR))
    {
        printf("320 x 200\n");
        m1 = 0; /* Reset mouse */
        mouse(&m1,&m2,&m3,&m4);
        m1 = 1; /* Show cursor */
        mouse(&m1,&m2,&m3,&m4);
    }
    getch();
    if (_setvideomode(_VRES16COLOR))
    {
        printf("640 x 480\n");
    }
}
```

(continued)

```

        getch();                /* Cursor is now hidden */
        m1 = 1;                 /* Show cursor */
        mouse(&m1, &m2, &m3, &m4);
    }
    getch();
}

void mouse(m1, m2, m3, m4)
int *m1, *m2, *m3, *m4;
{
    union REGS reg;

    reg.x.ax = *m1;
    reg.x.bx = *m2;
    reg.x.cx = *m3;
    reg.x.dx = *m4;
    int86(0x33, &reg, &reg);
    *m1 = reg.x.ax;
    *m2 = reg.x.bx;
    *m3 = reg.x.cx;
    *m4 = reg.x.dx;
}

```

Regardless of the screen mode, the mouse software uses a pair of virtual-screen coordinates to locate an object on the screen. Each pair of coordinates defines a point on the virtual screen. The horizontal coordinate is listed first.

Many mouse functions take virtual-screen coordinates as input or return them as output. Whenever you refer to a virtual-screen coordinate for a pixel or character in a mouse function, be sure the values are correct for the current screen mode. When you first program mouse functions, a common error is confusing physical-screen coordinates and virtual-screen coordinates. For example, in a medium-resolution mode (320 by 200 pixels) a horizontal mouse position of 320 pixels is at the center of the screen rather than at the right edge. In this case, even though there are 320 physical pixels across the screen, the virtual screen has 640 pixels. Remember that mouse functions always refer to virtual-screen coordinates.

The Cell Size column in Figure 6-1 lists for each mode the minimum resolution of mouse motion in terms of the virtual screen. Consider, for example, the 8-by-8 cell size listed for mode 3 (the 80-character-by-25-line text mode). In this mode, as the cursor moves from character to character, the returned position of the mouse changes by 8

virtual-screen units. The character cell at the upper left corner of the screen is located at mouse coordinates (0, 0), but when the cursor moves to the second character cell on that line, the coordinates become (8, 0). At the lower right character cell of the screen, the coordinates are (632, 192).

Graphics Modes

In graphics modes 6, E, F, 10, 11, and 12, and in graphics modes 5 and 6 with a Hercules Graphics Card (HGC), each pixel on the virtual screen maintains a one-to-one correspondence with each pixel on the physical screen. In these modes, the full range of coordinates listed in the Virtual Screen column of Figure 6-1 is available.

In graphics modes 4, 5, D, and 13, the size of the physical screen is 320 by 200 pixels. The size of the virtual screen for these modes is 640 by 200 pixels, which makes the modes consistent with the other CGA graphics modes. Notice that the horizontal coordinates for the mouse cursor are evenly numbered. Each horizontal pixel position on the screen represents a change of two virtual-screen units. Thus, the horizontal pixel positions numbered 0 through 319 on the physical screen map to positions 0 through 638 on the virtual screen. The vertical coordinates are unaffected because both the physical-screen and virtual-screen coordinates are numbered from 0 through 199.

Text Modes

Text modes 2, 3, and 7 display only characters on the screen, and each character is formed by an 8-by-8-pixel group. (See the Cell Size column in Figure 6-1.)

When in text mode, you can't access the individual pixels in a character, so the mouse software uses the coordinates of the pixel in the cell's upper left corner as the character's location. Because each character is formed by an 8-by-8-pixel group, both the horizontal and the vertical coordinates are multiples of 8.

For example, the character in the upper left corner of the screen has the coordinates (0, 0), and the character immediately to the right of that character has the coordinates (8, 0).

In text modes 0 and 1, as in text modes 2, 3, and 7, only characters can appear on the screen. Note that in modes 0 and 1 each character is a 16-by-8-pixel block. (See the Cell Size column in Figure 6-1.)

As in text modes 2, 3, and 7, the mouse software uses the coordinates of the pixel in the cell's upper left corner as the character's

location. But because modes 0 and 1 have only one-half as many pixels as modes 2, 3, and 7, the mouse software uses horizontal coordinates that are multiples of 16.

For example, the character in the upper left corner of the screen has the coordinates (0, 0), and the character immediately to the right of the first character has the coordinates (16, 0).

In all these text modes, whether they use 40 or 80 columns, the character cells are 8 pixels in height. This means that the vertical coordinates change by 8 virtual-screen units for each vertical character-cell movement of the cursor. For example, the first character in the second row of the screen has the coordinates (0, 8).

GRAPHICS AND TEXT CURSORS

The mouse software can display one of three cursors at a time:

- The graphics cursor, a shape that moves over images on the screen (for example, an arrow).
- The software text cursor, a character attribute that moves from character to character on the screen (for example, an underscore, reversed type, or a blinking square).
- The hardware text cursor, a flashing square, half-square, or underscore that moves from character to character on the screen.

In the graphics modes, the graphics cursor is the only cursor available. The mouse software can display either of the two types of text cursor in the text modes. Your application program might change the cursor type, shape, or other attributes “on the fly,” so it’s a good idea to hide the cursor temporarily while changes are made.

Functions 9 (Set Graphics Cursor Block) and 10 (Set Text Cursor) let you define the characteristics of the cursors in your application programs. You can define the characteristics yourself, or you can apply the characteristics of the sample cursors provided in this book. For more information about the sample cursors, see the descriptions of functions 9 and 10 in Chapter 8, “Mouse Function Calls.”

The Graphics Cursor

The graphics cursor, which is used when the video adapter is in one of the graphics modes, is a block of individual pixels. In modes 6, D, E, F, 10, 11, and 12, and modes 5 and 6 with an HGC, the cursor is a 16-by-16

square that contains 256 pixels. In modes 4 and 5, the cursor is an 8-by-16 square that contains 128 pixels.

As you move the mouse, the graphics cursor moves across the screen and interacts with the pixels directly under it. This interaction determines the cursor shape and background.

Screen Mask and Cursor Mask

For each graphics mode, the interaction between the screen pixels and the cursor pixels is defined by two 16-by-16-bit arrays: the screen mask and the cursor mask. The screen mask determines whether the cursor pixels are part of the shape or part of the background. The cursor mask determines how the pixels under the cursor contribute to the color of the cursor when the video adapter is in text mode.

In your application programs, you can specify the shapes of the screen mask and cursor mask by defining the shapes as arrays and passing these arrays as parameters in a call to Function 9 (Set Graphics Cursor Block). For more information about Function 9, see Chapter 8, “Mouse Function Calls.”

Mask interaction in modes 4 and 5. The interaction between the screen mask and the cursor mask differs somewhat between modes 4 and 5 and the rest of the graphics modes. In modes 4 and 5, each pair of bits in the masks represents one pixel on the screen. The graphics cursor masks are always defined as 16-by-16-bit squares; however, in modes 4 and 5 the cursor appears as an 8-by-16 rectangle of screen pixels. This two-to-one mapping causes each 2-bit pair of masks to represent one screen pixel. In all other graphics modes, one mask bit represents one pixel on the screen.

To create the cursor, the mouse software operates on the data in the computer’s screen memory that defines the color of each pixel on the screen. First, each bit in the masks expands to match the number of bits in video memory required for each pixel’s color information. For example, in mode D each screen pixel requires 4 bits to produce one of 16 possible colors. In this case, each *1* in the masks expands to *1111* and each *0* expands to *0000*. Other graphics modes result in different amounts of this bit expansion. Mode 4 (2 colors) doesn’t require expansion, whereas mode 13H (256 colors) requires that each mask bit expand to 8 bits.

The mouse software then logically ANDs each of these bit groups with the bit group for the associated screen pixel, which allows the pixel color to remain unaltered wherever the screen-mask bit is 1. It also

allows a new color setting wherever the screen-mask bit is 0. The pixel is blocked by a 0 bit and allowed through by a 1 bit.

Finally, the pixel bits are XORed with the expanded bit groups from the cursor mask. Where the cursor mask is 0, the pixels are unaltered. Where the mask is 1, the color bits are inverted. The result is an inversion of the color information for the pixel. Most commonly, the screen mask is 0 and the cursor mask is 1 wherever the cursor image is shown, resulting in a solid, bright white image. Careful manipulation of the screen and cursor masks and of the color palette information lets you create transparent or colorful graphics cursors.

Figure 6-2 shows how these operations affect each screen bit.

If the screen-mask bit is	And the cursor-mask bit is	The resulting screen bit is
0	0	0
0	1	1
1	0	Unchanged
1	1	Inverted

Figure 6-2. *This table shows how the screen-mask bit and the cursor-mask bit affect the screen bit.*

In modes 4 and 5, each pair of mask bits maps to one screen pixel, resulting in a slightly different cursor creation. Each screen pixel requires 2 bits of color information. These 2 bits logically AND and XOR with the screen mask bit pair and the cursor mask bit pair to form the cursor. Note that you should set each pair of mask bits to the same value to prevent the cursor image from bleeding around the edges. You can see this bleeding effect as a magenta or cyan (blue) fringe on the default cursor arrow when in mode 4 or 5.

Figure 6-3 on the following page depicts the screen and cursor masks for the default graphics cursor. The 1's in the screen mask let the background show through; the 0's hide the background pixels. The 1's in the cursor mask indicate bright white pixels composing the cursor image; the 0's let the background show through unaltered.

Mask interaction in modes E and 10. In modes E and 10, as in modes 6 and F, each bit in the screen mask and cursor mask corresponds to a pixel in the cursor block.

Screen Mask	Cursor Mask	Hot Spot
1001111111111111	0000000000000000	X = 0
1000111111111111	0010000000000000	Y = -1
1000011111111111	0011000000000000	
1000001111111111	0011100000000000	
1000000111111111	0011110000000000	
1000000011111111	0011111000000000	
1000000001111111	0011111100000000	
1000000000111111	0011111110000000	
1000000000011111	0011111111000000	
1000000000001111	0011111000000000	
1000000011111111	0011011000000000	
1000100001111111	0010001100000000	
1001100001111111	0000001100000000	
1111110000111111	0000000110000000	
1111110000111111	0000000110000000	
1111110001111111	0000000000000000	

Figure 6-3. *The default graphics-mode screen and cursor masks.*

The cursor mask and the screen mask are stored in off-screen memory, and each plane has its own identical copy of the cursor mask and screen mask. Therefore, for each plane, the resulting screen bit (as shown in Figure 6-2) is actually the bit used in the color lookup table on the EGA.

In EGA and VGA graphics modes, the color information is kept in lookup tables. This means that the pixel-color information bits represent an index to a table of predefined colors. By changing the colors in this table, you can change the color of the cursor. For more information about changing colors, see the Basic PALETTE statement or the `C_remappalette` function in your product's language reference manual.

The Graphics-Cursor Hot Spot

The graphics-cursor location is the point on the virtual screen that coincides with the cursor's *hot spot*. You can set the hot spot at any virtual-screen coordinates up to ± 127 units from the upper left corner of the screen-mask and cursor-mask definitions. This means that you can set the hot spot at a visible cursor pixel location or at an *invisible* pixel location where the background is visible. The cursor appears on the screen relative to the hot spot.

You define the hot spot in the cursor block by passing the horizontal and vertical coordinates of the point to Function 9. For all graphics

modes, the coordinates are relative to the upper left corner of the cursor block. In most cases, the hot spot is set in the range 0 through 15, the area where the cursor pixel masks are defined; however, you can define the hot spot anywhere in the range -128 through 127.

The Text Cursors

Two types of text cursors are available for use with the mouse. The software text cursor affects the appearance of the entire character cell, altering the character's attributes. The hardware text cursor comes with the computer hardware; it usually contains a block of scan lines in a portion of the character cell. Choosing one type of text cursor instead of the other is largely a matter of aesthetic preference. Both are fast and efficient.

The Software Text Cursor

You use the software text cursor when the video adapter is in one of the text screen modes. The software text cursor affects how characters appear on the screen. Unlike the graphics cursor, the software text cursor usually doesn't have a defined shape. Instead, it displays its position by changing the character attributes (such as foreground and background colors, intensity, and underscoring) of the character directly under it; however, if the cursor does have a defined shape, it takes the shape of one of the 256 characters in the ASCII character set.

The screen and cursor masks control which attributes are altered and whether the ASCII code for the character itself is modified.

The screen mask and cursor mask. Earlier in this chapter, you read about the relationships of screen and cursor masks to the graphics cursor. Software text cursors also use screen and cursor masks. In fact, the effect of the software text cursor on the character beneath it is defined by the screen mask and the cursor mask. The screen mask is a 16-bit value that determines which of the character's attributes are preserved, and the cursor mask is a 16-bit value that determines how these attributes change to yield the cursor.

To create the cursor, the mouse software operates on the data that defines each character on the screen. The mouse software first logically ANDs the screen mask and the 16 bits of screen data for the character currently beneath the cursor. The mouse software then logically XORs the cursor mask with the result of the AND operation, producing the cursor's appearance on the screen.

The format of the screen data for each character is shown in Figure 6-4. Each of the 16 bits shown has a purpose, as follows:

Bit(s)	Purpose
15	Sets blinking or nonblinking character
12-14	Sets the background color
11	Sets high intensity or medium intensity
8-10	Sets the foreground color
0-7	ASCII value of the character

The range of values for each field depends on the characteristics of the display adapter installed in your computer. (See the documentation that came with your display adapter for details.)

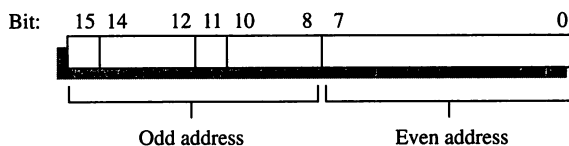


Figure 6-4. Data format for each screen character in text mode.

The screen mask and cursor mask are identical in structure to the character structure shown in Figure 6-4. The value contained in each field of the screen mask and cursor mask defines a character’s new attributes when the cursor is over that character. For example, to invert the foreground and background colors, be sure the screen mask and cursor mask have the values shown in Figure 6-5. (The software text cursor defined in this figure is the default cursor before Function 10 (Set Text Cursor) is called to redefine it.)

Bit:	15	14	12	11	10	8	7	0										
Screen mask:	0	1	1	1	0	1	1	1	1	1	1	1	1	1	1	1	= &H77FF	
Cursor mask:	0	1	1	1	0	1	1	1	1	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	= &H7700

Figure 6-5. Sample screen-mask and cursor-mask values.

In your application programs, you can define the values of the screen mask and cursor mask by passing their values as parameters to Function 10 (Set Text Cursor). For more information about Function 10, see Chapter 8, “Mouse Function Calls.”

The text-cursor location is determined by the virtual-screen coordinates of the character beneath the cursor. The text cursor doesn't have a hot spot.

The Hardware Text Cursor

The hardware text cursor is another type of text-mode cursor. You can also set a hardware text cursor by using Function 10.

The hardware text cursor is the computer's cursor—the one that appears on the screen after the MS-DOS system-level prompt. The mouse software lets you adapt this cursor to your needs.

Scan lines. The hardware cursor is 8 pixels in length and 8 to 14 pixels in height. Each horizontal set of pixels forms a line called a *scan line*. The cursor contains 8 to 14 scan lines.

Your program turns scan lines on or off. If a scan line is turned on, it appears as a flashing bar on the screen. If a scan line is turned off, it has no effect on the screen. Your program defines which lines are on and which are off by passing the numbers of the first and last lines in the cursor to Function 10.

The number of scan lines in the cursor depends on the display adapter installed in your computer. For example,

- If your computer has a Color/Graphics Adapter, the cursor contains 8 lines, numbered 0 through 7.
- If your computer has a Monochrome Display Adapter, the cursor contains 14 lines, numbered 0 through 13.
- If your computer has an Enhanced Graphics Adapter and a Color Display, the cursor contains 8 lines, numbered 0 through 7.
- If your computer has an Enhanced Graphics Adapter and an Enhanced Color Display, the cursor contains 8 lines, numbered 0 through 7.

THE INTERNAL CURSOR FLAG

Regardless of the type of cursor displayed, the mouse software maintains an internal flag that determines whether the cursor appears on the screen. The value of this flag is always 0 or less. When the value of the flag is 0, the mouse software displays the cursor. When the value of the flag is less than 0, the mouse software hides the cursor.

Application programs cannot change the value of this flag directly. To change the flag's value, your program must call Functions 1 (Show Cursor) and 2 (Hide Cursor). Function 1 increments the flag; Function 2 decrements it. Initially, the flag's value is -1 , so a call to Function 1 displays the cursor. A call to Function 42 (Get Cursor Hot Spot) returns the value of this flag.

Your program can call Function 1 or Function 2 any number of times, but if it calls Function 2, it must subsequently call Function 1 to restore the flag's previous value. For example, if the cursor displayed on the screen and your program calls Function 2 five times, it must also call Function 1 five times to return the cursor to the screen.

If your program calls Function 1 to display the cursor, any additional calls to Function 1 have no effect on the internal cursor flag; therefore, one call to Function 2 always hides the cursor. In addition, your program can call Function 0 (Mouse Reset and Status), or it can change screen modes to reset the flag to -1 and hide the cursor.

READING THE MOUSE

You can obtain input from the mouse by directing your program to read the status of the mouse buttons and check if (and how far) you have moved the mouse. Your program can also check how many times you pressed or released a particular button, and it can adjust the mouse movement sensitivity.

Mouse Buttons

Function 5 (Get Button Press Information) and Function 6 (Get Button Release Information) read the state of the mouse buttons. They return a count of the number of times the buttons are pressed and released. The button status is an integer value in which the first 2 bits are set or cleared. Bit 0 represents the state of the left-hand button, and bit 1 represents the state of the right-hand button. If a bit is set (equal to 1), the button is down. If a bit is clear (equal to 0), the button is up.

The mouse software increments a counter each time the corresponding button is pressed or released. Functions 5 and 6 can read the contents of these counters. The software sets the counter to 0 after you reset the mouse (Function 0) or after you read a counter's contents.

Mouse Unit of Distance: The Mickey

The motion of the mouse track ball translates into values that express the direction and duration of the motion. These values are given in a unit of distance called a *mickey*, which is approximately $\frac{1}{200}$ inch

($\frac{1}{400}$ inch for a 400 ppi mouse). When you move the mouse across a desktop, the mouse hardware passes a horizontal and vertical mickey count—that is, the number of mickeys the mouse ball rolled in the horizontal and vertical directions—to the mouse software. The mouse software uses the mickey count to move the cursor a certain number of pixels on the screen.

You can use Function 11 (Read Mouse Motion Counters) to read the relative motion counters kept by the mouse software. After the counters are read, they are reset to 0. You can also obtain the absolute position of the mouse as maintained by the mouse software by calling Function 3 (Get Button Status and Mouse Position).

Mouse Sensitivity

The number of pixels that the cursor moves doesn't always correspond one-to-one with the number of mickeys the track ball rolls. The mouse software defines a sensitivity for the mouse, which is the number of mickeys required to move the cursor 8 pixels on the screen. The sensitivity determines the rate at which the cursor moves.

In your application programs, you can define the mouse's sensitivity by passing a mickey count to Function 15 (Set Mickey/Pixel Ratio) or by calling Function 26 (Set Mouse Sensitivity). The default mickey count is 8 mickeys to 8 pixels, but the mickey count can be any value from 1 through 32,767. For example, if you pass a count of 32, the sensitivity is 32 mickeys per 8 pixels. In this case, the cursor moves at one-fourth the speed of the default setting.

CALLING MOUSE FUNCTIONS

Before calling any mouse functions, your program should verify that the mouse driver has been installed. (See "Testing for Installed Mouse" later in this chapter.) All example code in the function descriptions assumes that the mouse driver has been installed.

You can use either of two methods—`MOUSE.LIB` and `MS-DOS Interrupt 33H`—to communicate with the mouse driver from within a program. All mouse function calls are available by using either method. (See "The Mouse Programming Interface" in Chapter 2.)

`MOUSE.LIB` offers eight interfaces, four that support C language calling conventions and four that support Pascal calling conventions. (QuickBasic uses Pascal calling conventions.) Within each group of four is an interface for each of four different memory models: Small, Medium, Compact, and Large.

Interface	Convention	Model
cmouses	C	Small
cmousem	C	Medium
cmousec	C	Compact
cmousel	C	Large
mouse	Pascal	Small, Medium
mouses	Pascal	Small
mousem	Pascal	Medium
mousel	Pascal	Large, Compact

For Pascal calling conventions with small and medium memory models, the interfaces *mouse*, *mouses*, and *mousem* can be used interchangeably.

All MOUSE.LIB interfaces require four parameters. In the mouse function descriptions in this book, the parameter names *M1%*, *M2%*, *M3%*, and *M4%* act as placeholders. Following the standard notation for interpreted Basic and QuickBasic, the percent sign (%) emphasizes that the passed parameters are 16-bit integers. In C and QuickC, the parameters are short integers named *M1*, *M2*, *M3*, and *M4*.

For almost all mouse function calls using MOUSE.LIB, values are assigned to *M1%*, *M2%*, *M3%*, and *M4%*, and then the parameters are passed by reference to the MOUSE.LIB interface. (Functions 9, 12, 16, 22, 23, 24, and 51 treat *M4%* differently; see the function descriptions in Chapter 8 and “Passing Buffer Pointers” later in this chapter for details.)

The MS-DOS Interrupt method of calling mouse functions uses the AX, BX, CX, and DX registers to pass parameters that correspond to *M1%*, *M2%*, *M3%*, and *M4%*. In a few special cases, ES and SI are also used.

The example code in the function descriptions in Chapter 8 assumes the variable and types are defined as in the templates that follow (for example, *RegType* for QuickBasic and *iReg* and *oReg* for C and QuickC).

To initialize the variables *MOUSESEG* and *MOUSE* used in the interpreted Basic template, execute the interpreted Basic code listed in the section “Testing for Installed Mouse” later in this chapter before making any interpreted Basic program calls to the mouse. Also, for brevity in the function descriptions in Chapter 8, the two DEF SEG lines in the interpreted Basic template are not repeated in the example code shown.

Interpreted Basic

```

110 M1% = number of the function to be called
120 M2% = value of second parameter
130 M3% = value of third parameter
140 M4% = value of fourth parameter
150 DEF SEG = MOUSESEG
160 CALL MOUSE(M1%, M2%, M3%, M4%)
170 DEF SEG ' Restore Basic data segment
160 ' M1%, M2%, M3%, M4% now contain return values

```

The QuickBasic template that follows assumes a small or medium memory model. To use a compact or a large model, change *mouse* to *mouse.l*.

QuickBasic

```

' Using MOUSE.LIB interface
M1% = number of function to be called
M2% = value of second parameter
M3% = value of third parameter
M4% = value of fourth parameter
mouse( M1%, M2%, M3%, M4% )
' M1%, M2%, M3%, M4% now contain return values

```

QuickBasic

```

' Using MS-DOS Interrupt 33H
DEFINT A-Z
TYPE RegTypeX
    ax AS INTEGER
    bx AS INTEGER
    cx AS INTEGER
    dx AS INTEGER
    bp AS INTEGER
    si AS INTEGER
    di AS INTEGER
    flags AS INTEGER
    ds AS INTEGER
    es AS INTEGER
END TYPE

```

(continued)

continued

```

DECLARE SUB InterruptX (intnum%, iReg AS RegTypeX, oReg AS RegTypeX)
DIM iReg AS RegTypeX
DIM oReg AS RegTypeX
iReg.ax = number of the function to be called
iReg.bx = value of second parameter
iReg.cx = value of third parameter
iReg.dx = value of fourth parameter
InterruptX &H33, iReg, oReg
' oReg.ax, oReg.bx, oReg.cx, oReg.dx now contain return values

```

The C/QuickC template that follows assumes a small memory model. To change to another memory model, simply change the *define* statement.

C/QuickC

```

/* Using MOUSE.LIB */
#define mouse(a,b,c,d) cmouses(a,b,c,d)
int M1, M2, M3, M4;
M1 = number of function to be called;
M2 = value of second parameter;
M3 = value of third parameter;
M4 = value of fourth parameter;
mouse( &M1, &M2, &M3, &M4 );
/* M1, M2, M3, M4 now contain return values */

```

C/QuickC

```

/* Using MS-DOS Interrupt 0x33 */
#include <dos.h>
union REGS iReg,oReg;
iReg.x.ax = number of function to be called;
iReg.x.bx = value of second parameter;
iReg.x.cx = value of third parameter;
iReg.x.dx = value of fourth parameter;
int86(0x33, &iReg, &oReg);
/* oReg.x.ax, oReg.x.bx, oReg.x.cx, oReg.x.dx contain return values */

```

MASM

```

; Using MS-DOS Interrupt 33H
mov ax,number of function to be called
mov bx,value of second parameter
mov cx,value of third parameter
mov dx,value of fourth parameter
int 33h
; ax, bx, cd, dx now contain return values

```

If you use the MS-DOS Interrupt method for Functions 9, 12, 22, 23, 24, 41, 51, and 52, additional information is passed in register ES, and for Functions 43, 44, and 45, additional information is passed in registers ES and SI. To pass this information in QuickBasic, use the definition for *iReg* in the previous example and move the information into *iReg.es* and *iReg.si*. To pass this information in C and QuickC, read the current values of the segment registers by using *segread*, put the additional information into *segreg.es* and *segreg.si*, and then use *int86x* as shown in the following example.

C/QuickC

```

/* Using MS-DOS Interrupt 0x33 to pass additional information */
#include <dos.h>
union REGS iReg,oReg;
struct SREGS segregs;
iReg.x.ax = number of function to be called;
iReg.x.bx = value of second parameter;
iReg.x.cx = value of third parameter;
iReg.x.dx = value of fourth parameter;
segread(&segregs);
segreg.es = additional information;
segreg.si = additional information;
int86x( 0x33, &inregs, &outregs, &segreg );
/* oReg and segreg contain return values */

```

If the function description doesn't specify an input value for a parameter, you don't need to supply a value for that parameter before making the function call. If the function description doesn't specify an output value for a parameter, the parameter's value is the same before and after you make the function call.

NOTE: The mouse software doesn't check parameter input values, so be sure the values you assign to the parameters are correct for the given function and screen mode. If you pass the wrong number of parameters or assign incorrect values, the result will be unpredictable.

PASSING BUFFER POINTERS

Functions 9, 16, 22, 23, and 51 pass a pointer to a buffer as *M4%*.

If you are using C/QuickC and the MOUSE.LIB method to communicate to the mouse driver, use the following memory-model independent code to pass a pointer to the buffer as the fourth parameter.

C/QuickC

```
/* Memory Model Independent code for passing buffer pointer */
int _far *M4FPTR;          /* M4FPTR is a far pointer to */
M4FPTR = (int _far *)buffer; /* a buffer */
/* Variable &MFPTR can now be passed as the fourth */
/* parameter in a call to MOUSE.LIB for any memory model */
```

If you are using C/QuickC or MASM and the MS-DOS Interrupt method to communicate to the mouse driver, pass the offset of the buffer in the DX register and the segment of the buffer in the ES register.

C/QuickC

```
/* Passing buffer pointer to MS-DOS Interrupt */
iReg.x.ax = ...
iReg.x.bx = ...
iReg.x.cx = ...
iReg.x.dx = FP_OFF( mptr );
segregs.es = FP_SEG( mptr );
int86x(0x33, &iReg, &oReg, &segregs);
```

MASM

```
mov ax,...
mov bx,...
mov cx,...
mov dx,OFFSET buffer
mov ex SEG buffer
int 33h
int86x(0x33, &iReg, &oReg, &segregs)
```

TESTING FOR INSTALLED MOUSE

If you use the `MOUSE.LIB` method to communicate to the mouse, call Function 0 (Mouse Reset and Status) to verify that the mouse software and hardware are installed. If you have installed the mouse hardware and software correctly, Function 0 returns $MI\% = -1$. (With mouse version 6.25 or later, if the driver is installed correctly but you later disconnect a serial or PS/2 mouse, subsequent calls to Function 0 will return $MI\% = 0$.) If you didn't install the hardware and software correctly, Function 0 returns $MI\% = 0$.

If you use the MS-DOS Interrupt method to communicate to the mouse driver, you need to do the following: First check to see that the mouse-driver software was installed correctly by verifying that the vector for Interrupt 33H does not point to `0:0` or to an IRET instruction. Next check to see that the mouse hardware is installed by using Function 0 (Mouse Reset and Status). Optionally, you can then include a call to Functions 36 (Get Driver Version, Mouse Type, and IRQ Number) and 50 (Get Active Advanced Functions) to check the version of the mouse driver that is installed and to verify that the mouse functions you will use later in the application program are supported by the installed mouse driver.

Be sure your program issues a message if the mouse driver is not installed properly or (assuming you used Functions 36 and 50) if the mouse driver does not support the mouse functions you will use later.

Each of the following program fragments verifies mouse installation and displays a message stating whether the mouse driver and mouse were found.

Interpreted Basic communicates with the mouse driver directly without using `MOUSE.LIB` or the MS-DOS interrupts. The code that follows should appear in every interpreted Basic program. It determines the interrupt vector for MS-DOS Interrupt 33H and, if the mouse driver is installed, initializes `MOUSESEG` to the segment for the mouse driver and `MOUSE` to the offset of the second byte of the mouse driver. The second byte is a special entry point to support a call from interpreted Basic, which passes its parameters on the stack. Only interpreted Basic programs should use this entry point. All mouse function calls are then made by setting the segment to `MOUSESEG`, calling `MOUSE`, and resetting the segment as shown in the previous example.

Interpreted Basic

```

100 ' Verify Mouse Driver & Mouse Installed
110 '
120 ' Determine mouse-driver interrupt address
130 DEF SEG = 0
140 MOUSEG = 256 * PEEK(207) + PEEK(206)
150 MOUSE = 256 * PEEK(205) + PEEK(204) + 2
160 DEF SEG = MOUSEG
170 '
180 ' Check if interrupt code loaded
190 IF (MOUSEG% OR (MOUSE% - 2)) AND (PEEK(MOUSE - 2) <> 207) THEN GOTO 260
200 PRINT "Mouse driver not found"
210 DEF SEG ' Restore Basic data segment
220 END
230 '
240 ' Mouse Reset and Status
250 M1% = 0
260 CALL MOUSE(M1%, M2%, M3%, M4%)
270 DEF SEG ' Restore Basic data segment
280 '
290 ' Was mouse hardware found?
300 IF M1% = -1 THEN 340
310 PRINT "Mouse not found"
320 END
330 '
340 PRINT "Mouse driver and mouse found and reset"
350 END

```

QuickBasic

```

' Verify Mouse Driver & Mouse Installed
' Determine mouse-driver interrupt address
DEF SEG = 0
mouseseg = 256 * PEEK(207) + PEEK(206)
mouseofs = 256 * PEEK(205) + PEEK(204) + 2
DEF SEG = mouseseg
IF (mouseseg = 0 AND mouseofs = 0) OR PEEK(mouseofs) = 207 THEN
    PRINT "Mouse driver not found"
    SYSTEM
END IF
' Mouse Reset and Status
iReg.ax = 0
Interrupt &H33, iReg, oReg

```

(continued)

```

IF oReg.ax = -1 THEN
    PRINT "Mouse driver and mouse found and reset"
ELSE
    PRINT "Mouse not found"
SYSTEM
END IF

```

C/QuickC

```

/* Verify Mouse Driver & Mouse Installed */
#include <stdio.h>
#include <stdlib.h>
#include <dos.h>
main()
{
    union REGS iReg,oReg;
    void (interrupt far *int_handler)();
    long vector;
    unsigned char first_byte;
    /* Determine mouse-driver interrupt address */
    /* Get interrupt vector and first instruction of interrupt */
    int_handler = _dos_getvect(0x33);
    first_byte = * (unsigned char far *) int_handler;
    vector = (long) int_handler;
    /* Vector shouldn't be 0, and first instruction shouldn't be iret */
    if ((vector == 0) || (first_byte == 0xcf))
    {
        printf("Mouse driver not found");
        exit(1);
    }
    /* Mouse Reset and Status */
    iReg.x.ax = 0;
    int86(0x33, &iReg, &oReg);
    /* Was the mouse found? */
    if (oReg.x.ax == -1)
        printf("Mouse driver and mouse found and reset\n");
    else
    {
        printf("Mouse not found\n");
        exit(1);
    }
}

```

MASM

```

; Verify Mouse Driver & Mouse Installed
print MACRO string
    mov dx,OFFSET string
    mov ah,9
    int 21h
    ENDM
DOSSEG
.MODEL SMALL
.STACK 100h
.DATA
mesg0 db "Mouse driver not found", 13, 10, "$"
mesg1 db "Mouse not found", 13, 10, "$"
mesg2 db "Mouse driver and mouse found and reset", 13, 10, "$"
.CODE
; Set up DS for the data segment
start: mov ax, @DATA
    mov ds,ax
    ; Determine mouse-driver interrupt address
    mov ax,3533h ; Get Interrupt 33H vector
    int 21h
    mov ax,es
    or ax,bx
    jz no_driver ; es and bx both 0 ?
    cmp byte ptr es:[bx], 207
    jne reset
no_driver:
    print mesg0
    ; Exit with a code of 1
    mov al,1
    jmp short exit
reset: ; Mouse Reset and Status
    xor ax,ax ; M1% = 0
    int 33h
    ; Was mouse found?
    or ax,ax
    jne found
    ; Mouse not found
    print mesg1
    ; Exit with a code of 1
    mov al,1
    jmp short exit

```

(continued)

```
found: ; Mouse was found
        print msg2
        ; Exit with a code of 0
        xor al,al
        ; Exit to MS-DOS
exit:   mov ah, 4Ch
        int 21h
END     start
```



Chapter 7

Mouse Programming Considerations

This chapter covers some basic programming considerations for adding mouse support to your application programs. It discusses specific uses for commonly used mouse functions as well as functions that address more advanced programming issues. The last section presents a list of mouse functions categorized by operation.

SETTING UP YOUR SYSTEM

The Microsoft mouse driver provides 51 functions for adding mouse support to your application program. After you load the mouse driver—either by loading `MOUSE.COM` from the MS-DOS command prompt or from `AUTOEXEC.BAT` or by loading `MOUSE.SYS` with a `DEVICE` directive in `CONFIG.SYS`—you can include these functions in your application program by calling MS-DOS Interrupt 33H with the appropriate parameters or by using the mouse library, `MOUSE.LIB`.

Although using these functions is fairly straightforward, to do so you must consider several aspects of the system on which your application is running. The most important considerations are the type of video hardware installed and what modes it is capable of displaying. Mouse functions that draw, display, and move the cursor are heavily dependent on the current video display mode. Other considerations include the version of the mouse driver, the language setting for the country in which the application program is being used, and whether the application program using the mouse is a terminate-and-stay-resident (TSR) program.

Although there are no hard-and-fast rules about where you must place mouse support within your program, you should include certain mouse functions early in your program to ensure that you installed the mouse driver properly and that its version supports the mouse functions you plan to use in your application. In addition, because the mouse driver works closely with the video adapter, be sure your application program communicates with the video adapter by using the BIOS. You should not program the video hardware directly.

You make mouse function calls either by using Interrupt 33H or by calling the MOUSE.LIB library. Both methods offer identical functionality and differ only in how you access them. See Chapter 2, “Overview of Mouse Programming,” for more information; however, note that application programs calling the MOUSE.LIB must treat the functions as external.

You must include four variables when making a mouse function call. The first variable identifies the function number; the other three provide any additional information required by that function. The mouse function returns information in these same variables. You declare the variables as you would any other integer-value variables within your program.

Testing for the Mouse Driver

After declaring any necessary variables and functions, you should check that the mouse driver was installed correctly by verifying that the vector for Interrupt 33H does not point to 0:0 or to an IRET instruction. You can also include a call to Function 36 (Get Driver Version, Mouse Type, and IRQ Number) to check the version number of the installed mouse driver. If the version number is high enough (7.0 or later), a call to Function 50 (Get Active Advanced Functions) is necessary to determine which of the functions beyond 36 are available.

NOTE: Be sure your program issues an error message that sends a warning if the mouse driver is not installed properly or if the mouse-driver version is incapable of supporting the mouse functions you plan to use later.

You should then include Function 0 (Mouse Reset and Status) in your program to reset the mouse driver. A call to Function 47 (Mouse Hardware Reset) performs the same reset function as Function 0, but it doesn't reset the software values, only hardware values.

In most cases, you can now call Function 1 (Show Cursor) in your application program to display a cursor. The cursor that appears reflects the current mode of the video adapter: The mouse driver displays a square if the video adapter is in text mode or a solid arrow if the video adapter is in graphics mode. If your video adapter is in a mode that is not supported by the mouse driver, the result is unpredictable. For example, the cursor might not appear at all, but your application might continue to run normally; or your system might lock up. (See “Supported and Unsupported Video Modes” later in this chapter.)

Before calling Function 1 (Show Cursor) to display the cursor, you can first call other mouse functions to perform tasks such as modifying the shape of the cursor or defining an area to which cursor movement will be restricted. Although you can include these calls at any point in the program, you might want to do so early to avoid making changes in the program later.

Controlling the Cursor

As explained in Chapter 6, “Mouse Programming Interface,” you can include in your program Function 9 (Set Graphics Cursor Block) and Function 10 (Set Text Cursor) to modify the shape of any graphics or text cursor. In addition, you can use Function 7 (Set Minimum and Maximum Horizontal Cursor Position) and Function 8 (Set Minimum and Maximum Vertical Cursor Position) to define a boundary for cursor movement on the screen. You can also use Function 16 (Conditional Off) to define an area of the screen in which the cursor will disappear if moved into that area.

To turn off the cursor completely without losing any of the cursor attributes you’ve set in your program, you can use Function 2 (Hide Cursor). Note that after your program hides the cursor, the mouse driver continues to keep track of mouse movements and button presses. If you include in your program mouse functions that continue to track mouse movements and button presses when the cursor is turned off, you can use Function 1 (Show Cursor) to display the cursor in the updated position. You can also use Function 4 (Set Mouse Cursor Position) to position the cursor before you display it.

Other functions let you control the relationship between mouse movement and cursor movement. Function 15 (Set Mickey/Pixel Ratio) adjusts the ratio of mouse movement to cursor movement, and Function 19 (Set Double-Speed Threshold) defines the level of mouse

movement speed that causes mouse sensitivity to double. Note that Function 19 is a “quick-and-dirty” method for providing crude acceleration. You can manipulate full acceleration curves by calling Function 43 (Load Acceleration Curves), Function 44 (Read Acceleration Curves), and Function 45 (Set/Get Acceleration Curve).

A single call to Function 26 (Set Mouse Sensitivity) is equivalent to separate calls to Functions 15 and 19. In most cases, you’ll find it’s easier to use Function 26 than to use the two separate functions. Calling Function 27 (Get Mouse Sensitivity) lets your program check the current mickey-per-pixel ratio and double-speed threshold, allowing the program to use Function 26 to reset values if necessary.

Determining Mouse Position and Button-Press Status

To use the mouse as more than a pointing device, you need to request from the mouse driver status information about mouse position and button presses. Your program can then use the information to control program flow by augmenting the user interface.

You can use Function 3 (Get Button Status and Mouse Position) to determine whether the user pressed a mouse button and, if so, the position of the cursor when the button was pressed. This information lets your program perform tasks such as highlighting text, selecting on-screen menu items, and creating shapes.

Function 5 (Get Button Press Information) and Function 6 (Get Button Release Information) return mouse-movement and button-press status. Functions 5 and 6 are similar to Function 3 except that they maintain a buffer to keep a cumulative count of button presses or releases since those functions were last called. Function 3 checks the button-press status at the time of the function call. Functions 5 and 6 let you build a “click-ahead” buffer into your program in the same way as the keyboard buffer lets you use a type-ahead buffer.

Using Function 11 (Read Mouse Motion Counters) lets your program keep track of relative mouse motion, as opposed to absolute screen position. In other words, Function 11 can indicate how far the user moved the mouse since the last call to Function 11.

Function 39 (Get Screen/Cursor Masks & Mickey Counts) lets your program determine raw counts for accumulated mickey counts since the last time the mouse was polled for movement. These counts are unaffected by acceleration tables, double-speed threshold, or sensitivity settings.

BallPoint Support

All functions but one operate in the same way for the Microsoft mouse and the Microsoft BallPoint mouse. Call Function 48 (Set/Get Ball-Point Information) to control the variables unique to the BallPoint—direction orientation and button definition.

ADVANCED TOPICS

Several mouse functions address specific programming issues not normally encountered in an average program. The following sections discuss these functions.

Querying the Driver

You can use a variety of functions to determine the status of the mouse driver, including Function 37, Function 38, Function 39, Function 42, Function 49, and Function 51. Accessible information includes mouse type, cursor type, interrupt rate, internal flags, xy -coordinate minimums and maximums, screen-mask values, cursor-mask values, horizontal and vertical raw mickey counts, and switch settings. See specific function descriptions in Chapter 8 for further details.

Video Modes

Due to the close interaction between the mouse driver and the video adapter, you need to take special steps if your program performs advanced video techniques. (For EGA programming considerations, see Chapter 10, “Writing Mouse Programs for IBM EGA Modes.”)

When your program changes video modes, the manner in which the system uses video memory can change substantially. To ensure that the cursor does not interfere with other portions of memory, you should first include Function 2 (Hide Cursor) in your program to hide the cursor. You can then change the video mode within the program and use Function 1 (Show Cursor) to display the cursor again. Taking these steps reduces the possibility of interference with video memory.

(We also recommend hiding the cursor if you want to draw an object under the cursor in graphics mode.)

Function 40 (Set Video Mode) instructs applications to inform the mouse driver of the currently active video mode. Legally set video-mode numbers will override any video-mode default assumptions from the mouse driver. The application can find valid video-mode numbers by calling Function 41 (Enumerate Video Modes).

Video Paging

Many video adapters have several pages of memory available for programs to use. To accommodate this feature, include in your program Function 29 (Set CRT Page Number) and Function 30 (Get CRT Page Number), which report to the mouse driver which video page is active so the driver can display the mouse cursor there.

User-Installed Mouse Interrupt Subroutines

Any mouse event that occurs as the application is running, such as a mouse movement or a button press, generates a hardware interrupt. The operating system detects the interrupt, suspends processing of the currently running program, and checks the interrupt vector table for the address of the interrupt routine, which in this case is an address installed by the mouse driver when the driver was loaded. The operating system then transfers control to the interrupt routine, which executes and returns control to the operating system. Finally, the operating system “cleans up” the interrupt and returns control to the program that was running.

When it executes, the interrupt routine installed by the mouse driver first checks the call mask, a built-in table of bits that correspond to types of mouse events, such as a mouse movement, a button press, a button release, and so on. If the bit corresponding to the mouse event that caused the interrupt is set to 0 (zero), the interrupt handler simply

executes as it normally would. If the corresponding bit is set to 1, the interrupt handler also executes the user-written interrupt handler for that event.

You can specify the location of an interrupt handler that you created, as well as make changes to the call mask, by using any of three mouse functions provided for that purpose: Function 12 (Set Interrupt Subroutine Call Mask and Address), Function 20 (Swap Interrupt Subroutines), and Function 24 (Set Alternate Subroutine Call Mask and Address). You can use an additional function, Function 25 (Get User Alternate Interrupt Address), before calling Function 20 or Function 24 to determine which subroutine mask and address were set by a previous call to Function 20 or Function 24.

Writing and Installing Custom Interrupt Handlers

You write and install custom interrupt handlers for one or more mouse events if you want an alternate set of events to occur as the result of an action. Doing so supplements the steps the mouse driver would normally take for a mouse event.

Your first step in installing a custom interrupt handler is to write the interrupt subroutine. You need to write the subroutine as a FAR assembly language subroutine because it must perform an intersegment return to the mouse driver. Next you must determine which mouse event(s) will cause your subroutine to be used in addition to the mouse driver's subroutine and then set the appropriate call-mask bit(s). For each mouse event, such as a right-hand button press, the driver checks the portion of the call mask that represents that event to determine if that event causes the interrupt subroutine to be executed. If so, the system executes your interrupt subroutine. Interrupt routines cannot call any MS-DOS or BIOS interrupts because MS-DOS and the BIOS are not reentrant; that is, they can't be suspended to call other instances of themselves.

To install your custom interrupt subroutine, you can use one of three functions: Function 12 (Set Interrupt Subroutine Call Mask and Address), Function 20 (Swap Interrupt Subroutines), or Function 24 (Set Alternate Subroutine Call Mask and Address). Note, however, that Functions 20 and 24 have superseded Function 12 and provide more flexibility and functionality.

Function 12. Function 12 (Set Interrupt Subroutine Call Mask and Address) replaces an existing interrupt subroutine address and call mask with a new address and call mask. When the mask condition specified

by Function 12 is matched, the specified subroutine is executed. The disadvantage of using Function 12 is that it doesn't offer a method for the calling program to obtain the existing subroutine address and call mask so they can be restored after the subroutine specified by Function 12 executes. For example, suppose you are writing a terminate-and-stay-resident program for the mouse and you need to install your own interrupt subroutine. Function 12 replaces the existing interrupt address in the mouse driver with its own interrupt address; consequently, the program you are running is unable to call its interrupt subroutine. We therefore strongly recommend that you use Function 20 or Function 24 rather than Function 12.

Function 20. Like Function 12, Function 20 (Swap Interrupt Subroutines) replaces an existing subroutine address and call mask with a new address and call mask. Function 20 also returns to the program the previous address and call mask so that the program can restore them after it finishes with the new subroutine and call mask.

Function 24. Function 24 (Set Alternate Subroutine Call Mask and Address) sets up to three unique interrupt addresses and call masks. This function lets you create up to three separate interrupt subroutines, each of which has its own call mask, so that your program can perform a different action depending on which event specified by the call mask occurs. Note that you don't need to create all three subroutines. For example, you can create only one interrupt subroutine and have the addresses associated with all three call masks point to it; then any of three unique events will cause that interrupt subroutine to execute.

Alternate subroutines set by Function 24 are always activated by a combination of a Shift, Alt, or Ctrl key press combined with mouse motion or button presses. The call mask for each call to Function 24 must include one or more of the bits that correspond to the shift keys as well as one or more of the bits that correspond to mouse activity.

Light-Pen Emulation

When you use Function 13 (Light-Pen Emulation Mode On), the mouse emulates a light pen. You use this function primarily to include mouse support for programs that have been developed for use with a light pen. With light-pen emulation mode on, the mouse loads its cursor-position values into the area of the system where a light pen would load its position values.

NOTE: You cannot use a light pen and a mouse at the same time. If your system has a light pen and a mouse installed, you must use Function 14 (Light-Pen Emulation Mode Off) to prevent the mouse's position values from conflicting with those of the light pen. By default, light-pen emulation mode is on.

Supported and Unsupported Video Modes

Figure 7-1 lists the most commonly used video modes supported by the Microsoft mouse. To access a complete listing of all supported video modes, call Function 41 (Enumerate Video Modes). Figure 6-1 on page 81 also offers a complete listing.

Video Mode	Display Adapter	Mode	Screen Resolution
0	CGA, EGA, MCGA, VGA, 3270	text	640 × 200
1	CGA, EGA, MCGA, VGA, 3270	text	640 × 200
2	CGA, EGA, MCGA, VGA, 3270	text	640 × 200
3	CGA, EGA, MCGA, VGA, 3270	text	640 × 200
4	CGA, EGA, MCGA, VGA, 3270	graphics	640 × 200
5	CGA, EGA, MCGA, VGA, 3270	graphics	640 × 200
6	CGA, EGA, MCGA, VGA, 3270	graphics	640 × 200
7	MDA, EGA, MCGA, VGA, 3270	text	640 × 200
D	EGA, VGA	graphics	640 × 200
E	EGA, VGA	graphics	640 × 200
F	EGA, VGA	graphics	640 × 350
10	EGA, VGA	graphics	640 × 350
11	MCGA, VGA	graphics	640 × 480
12	VGA	graphics	640 × 480
13	MCGA, VGA	graphics	640 × 200

MDA = Monochrome Display Adapter

CGA = Color/Graphics Adapter

EGA = Enhanced Graphics Adapter

MCGA = Multi-Color Graphics Array

VGA = Video Graphics Array

3270 = IBM 3270 All-Points-Addressable Graphics Adapter

Figure 7-1. Commonly used video modes supported by the Microsoft mouse.

NOTE: For Hercules Monochrome Graphics cards, the current convention is to use screen mode 5 for page 1 and screen mode 6 for page 0. See Appendix F, "Using the Mouse with the Hercules Graphics Card."

The mouse driver might not draw the cursor correctly or return correct screen coordinates in unsupported screen modes. If you want to use the mouse with an unsupported screen mode, contact Microsoft Product Support or the manufacturer of your video adapter. (Instructions for contacting Microsoft Product Support can be found in the documentation that comes packaged with your Microsoft mouse.)

Language Support

The table in Figure 7-2 shows the languages supported by the international version of the mouse driver, the language numbers, and the language switch designators.

Language	Language Number	Switch Designator
English	0	None (default)
French	1	F
Dutch	2	NL
German	3	D
Swedish	4	S
Finnish	5	SF
Spanish	6	E
Portuguese	7	P
Italian	8	I

Figure 7-2. *The languages supported by the international version of the mouse driver.*

The /L command-line switch sets the language when the mouse driver is loaded; load-time messages are displayed in the selected language. The mouse driver does not issue run-time messages, and messages used by the nonselected languages are not loaded into memory.

Function 34 (Set Language for Messages) is a special-case function that lets the mouse reset the language being used. Only the mouse driver can use this function; your program cannot. Using Function 34 on the domestic (English only) version of the mouse has no effect; the domestic version ignores the /L command-line switch.

Occasions might arise when you need to know the installed language. Function 35 (Get Language Number) returns the number value of the currently installed language.

MOUSE FUNCTIONS

The following list organizes the mouse functions by functional category:

Driver Control and Feedback

- Function 0: Mouse Reset and Status
- Function 21: Get Mouse Driver State Storage Requirements
- Function 22: Save Mouse Driver State
- Function 23: Restore Mouse Driver State
- Function 28: Set Mouse Interrupt Rate
- Function 31: Disable Mouse Driver
- Function 32: Enable Mouse Driver
- Function 33: Software Reset
- Function 36: Get Driver Version, Mouse Type, and IRQ Number
- Function 37: Get General Information (Driver Type, Cursor Type, and IRQ Number)
- Function 38: Get Maximum Virtual Coordinates
- Function 39: Get Screen/Cursor Masks and Mickey Counts
- Function 42: Get Cursor Hot Spot
- Function 43: Load Acceleration Curves
- Function 44: Read Acceleration Curves
- Function 45: Set/Get Active Acceleration Curve
- Function 47: Mouse Hardware Reset
- Function 49: Get Minimum/Maximum Virtual Coordinates
- Function 50: Get Active Advanced Functions
- Function 51: Get Switch Settings

Cursor Control

- Function 1: Show Cursor
- Function 2: Hide Cursor
- Function 4: Set Mouse Cursor Position
- Function 7: Set Minimum and Maximum Horizontal Cursor Position
- Function 8: Set Minimum and Maximum Vertical Cursor Position
- Function 9: Set Graphics Cursor Block
- Function 10: Set Text Cursor
- Function 15: Set Mickey/Pixel Ratio
- Function 16: Conditional Off

(continued)

Cursor Control *continued*

- Function 19: Set Double-Speed Threshold
- Function 26: Set Mouse Sensitivity
- Function 27: Get Mouse Sensitivity
- Function 43: Load Acceleration Curves
- Function 44: Read Acceleration Curves
- Function 45: Set/Get Active Acceleration Curve

Button and Position Feedback

- Function 3: Get Button Status and Mouse Position
- Function 5: Get Button Press Information
- Function 6: Get Button Release Information
- Function 11: Read Mouse Motion Counters
- Function 48: Set/Get BallPoint Information

Video Control and Feedback

- Function 29: Set CRT Page Number
- Function 30: Get CRT Page Number
- Function 40: Set Video Mode
- Function 41: Enumerate Video Modes

Connecting to Additional Subroutines

- Function 12: Set Interrupt Subroutine Call Mask and Address
- Function 20: Swap Interrupt Subroutines

Connecting to Alternate Subroutine

- Function 24: Set Alternate Subroutine Call Mask and Address
- Function 25: Get User Alternate Interrupt Address

Light-Pen Emulation

- Function 13: Light-Pen Emulation Mode On
- Function 14: Light-Pen Emulation Mode Off

Language Support (International Version Only)

- Function 34: Set Language for Messages
- Function 35: Get Language Number

For more information about programming with mouse functions and for specific programming examples, see Chapter 8, “Mouse Function Calls,” and Chapter 9, “Sample Mouse Programming Interface Programs.”

Chapter 8

Mouse Function Calls

This chapter describes the operation of each mouse function, the input required to make each function call, and the resulting output. The actual function-call statements follow the format of the programming language you choose to use. This chapter provides examples for calling each function in the following languages: interpreted Basic, Quick-Basic, C and QuickC, and MASM (Microsoft Macro Assembler). For further instructions on making function calls from these languages, see Chapter 9, “Sample Mouse Programming Interface Programs.”

The program fragments in each function description assume you have verified that the mouse hardware and software are installed. See the sections “Calling Mouse Functions,” “Passing Buffer Pointers,” and “Testing for Installed Mouse” in Chapter 6 for detailed information about proper variable and type declarations and methods for communicating with the mouse hardware and software.

NOTE: If you design a mouse-supported application program that uses a graphics mode on an IBM EGA (or on a graphics adapter emulating an EGA) that is not supported by the mouse driver, or if you program the EGA hardware directly, your program must interact with the adapter through the Microsoft EGA Register Interface. For instructions on using the EGA Register Interface, see Chapter 10, “Writing Mouse Programs for IBM EGA Modes.”

INTRODUCTION TO MOUSE FUNCTIONS

The table that follows shows the number and name of each mouse function described in this chapter.

Function Number	Function Name
0	Mouse Reset and Status
1	Show Cursor
2	Hide Cursor
3	Get Button Status and Mouse Position
4	Set Mouse Cursor Position
5	Get Button Press Information
6	Get Button Release Information
7	Set Minimum and Maximum Horizontal Cursor Position
8	Set Minimum and Maximum Vertical Cursor Position
9	Set Graphics Cursor Block
10	Set Text Cursor
11	Read Mouse Motion Counters
12	Set Interrupt Subroutine Call Mask and Address
13	Light-Pen Emulation Mode On
14	Light-Pen Emulation Mode Off
15	Set Mickey/Pixel Ratio
16	Conditional Off
19	Set Double-Speed Threshold
20	Swap Interrupt Subroutines
21	Get Mouse Driver State Storage Requirements
22	Save Mouse Driver State
23	Restore Mouse Driver State
24	Set Alternate Subroutine Call Mask and Address
25	Get User Alternate Interrupt Address
26	Set Mouse Sensitivity
27	Get Mouse Sensitivity
28	Set Mouse Interrupt Rate
29	Set CRT Page Number
30	Get CRT Page Number
31	Disable Mouse Driver
32	Enable Mouse Driver
33	Software Reset
34	Set Language for Messages
35	Get Language Number
36	Get Driver Version, Mouse Type, and IRQ Number

(continued)

Function Number	Function Name
37	Get General Driver Information
38	Get Maximum Virtual Coordinates
39	Get Screen/Cursor Masks and Mickey Counts
40	Set Video Mode
41	Enumerate Video Modes
42	Get Cursor Hot Spot
43	Load Acceleration Curves
44	Read Acceleration Curves
45	Set/Get Active Acceleration Curve
47	Mouse Hardware Reset
48	Set/Get BallPoint Information
49	Get Minimum/Maximum Virtual Coordinates
50	Get Active Advanced Functions
51	Get Switch Settings
52	Get MOUSE.INI

Each function description includes the following:

- The parameters required to make the function call (input) and the expected return values (output).
- Any special considerations regarding the function.
- Sample program fragments that illustrate how to use the function call.

The mouse function parameter names *M1%*, *M2%*, *M3%*, and *M4%* are placeholders. When you make a function call, use the actual values that you want to pass. Be sure the values are appropriate for the language you are using.

If the function description doesn't specify an input value for a parameter, you don't need to supply a value for that parameter before making the function call. If the function description doesn't specify an output value for a parameter, the parameter's value is the same before and after you make the function call.

NOTE: All mouse function calls require four parameters. The mouse software doesn't check input values, so be sure the values you assign to the parameters are correct for the given function and screen mode. If you pass the wrong number of parameters or assign incorrect values, you will get unpredictable results.

MOUSE FUNCTION 0: MOUSE RESET AND STATUS

Call with M1% = 0

Returns M1% = mouse status (if mouse found and reset = -1, otherwise = 0)
 M2% = number of buttons (if mouse found and reset = 2)

Description Mouse Function 0 returns the current status of the mouse hardware and software. If you installed the mouse hardware and software (mouse driver version 6.25 or later), the mouse status value is -1. (With mouse version 6.25 or later, if the driver is installed correctly but you later disconnect a serial or PS/2 mouse, subsequent calls to Function 0 will return *M1% = 0*.) If you didn't install the hardware and software, the mouse status value is 0.

If the mouse pointer is currently visible, Function 0 hides it as a part of the reset process. Function 0 also disables any interrupt handlers previously installed by the user for mouse events except those installed by using Function 24.

Function 0 resets the mouse driver to the following default values:

Parameter	Value
Cursor position	Center of screen
Internal cursor flag	-1 (cursor hidden)
Graphics cursor	Arrow
Text cursor	Reverse video block
Interrupt call mask	All 0 (no interrupt subroutine specified)*
Light-pen emulation mode	Enabled
Horizontal mickey-per-pixel ratio	8 to 8
Vertical mickey-per-pixel ratio	16 to 8
Double-speed threshold	64 mickeys per second
Minimum horizontal cursor position	0
Maximum horizontal cursor position	Current display-mode virtual screen <i>x</i> -value minus 1
Minimum vertical cursor position	0
Maximum vertical cursor position	Current display-mode virtual screen <i>y</i> -value minus 1
CRT page number	0

*This is true only for interrupt subroutines that weren't installed by using Function 24.

Examples Each of the following program fragments resets the mouse.

Interpreted Basic

```

100 ' Mouse Reset and Status
110 M1% = 0
120 CALL MOUSE(M1%, M2%, M3%, M4%)
130 IF M1% = -1 THEN 160
140 PRINT "Mouse not found"
150 END
160 ' Mouse found and reset

```

QuickBasic

```

' Mouse Reset and Status
iReg.ax = 0
InterruptX &H33, iReg, oReg

```

C/QuickC

```

/* Mouse Reset and Status */
iReg.x.ax = 0;
int86(0x33, &iReg, &oReg);

```

MASM

```

; Mouse Reset and Status
xor ax,ax           ; M1% = 0
int 33h

```

MOUSE FUNCTION 1: SHOW CURSOR

Call with M1% = 1

Returns Nothing

Description Mouse Function 1 increments the internal cursor flag and, if the value of the flag is 0, displays the cursor on the screen. The mouse driver then tracks the motion of the mouse, changing the cursor's position as the mouse changes position.

NOTE: If your program used Function 7 or Function 8 to establish a display area, Function 1 displays the cursor within that area. Also, Function 1 will disable a conditional-off region established by using Function 16 (Conditional Off).

The current value of the internal cursor flag depends on the number of calls your program makes to Functions 1 and 2. The default flag value is -1. Therefore, when you start up your computer or reset the mouse driver by using Function 0 or Function 33, your program must call Function 1 to redisplay the cursor. For more information about the internal cursor flag, see Chapter 6, "Mouse Programming Interface."

If the value of the internal cursor flag is already 0, Function 1 does nothing.

Examples Each of the following program fragments shows how you can make the mouse cursor visible after you reset the mouse driver by using Function 0.

Interpreted Basic

```
110 ' Show Cursor
120 M1% = 1
130 CALL MOUSE(M1%, M2%, M3%, M4%)
```

QuickBasic

```
' Show Cursor
iReg.ax = 1
InterruptX &H33, iReg, oReg
```

C/QuickC

```
/* Show Cursor */
iReg.x.ax = 1;
int86(0x33, &iReg, &oReg);
```

MASM

```
; Show Cursor
mov ax,1
int 33h
```

MOUSE FUNCTION 2: HIDE CURSOR

Call with M1% = 2

Returns Nothing

Description Mouse Function 2 removes the cursor from the screen and decrements the internal cursor flag. After Function 2 hides the cursor, the mouse driver continues to track the motion of the mouse, changing the cursor's position as the mouse changes position.

Use this function before you change any area of the screen that contains the cursor. This ensures that the cursor won't affect the data you write to the screen.

NOTE: If your program changes the screen mode, it should call Function 2 prior to changing the screen mode and then call Function 1 so that the cursor will be drawn correctly the next time it appears on the screen.

Each time your program calls Function 2, it must subsequently call Function 1 to restore the internal cursor flag to its previous value. Alternatively, your program can call Function 0 or Function 33 to force the value of the internal cursor flag to -1 and then call Function 1 to display the cursor again. For more information about the internal cursor flag, see Chapter 6, "Mouse Programming Interface."

At the end of your program, call Function 2, Function 0, or Function 33 to hide the cursor; otherwise, if the internal cursor flag is 0 when the program ends, the cursor remains on the screen.

Examples Each of the following program fragments shows how you can make the cursor invisible.

Interpreted Basic

```
110 ' Hide Cursor
120 M1% = 2
130 CALL MOUSE(M1%, M2%, M3%, M4%)
```

QuickBasic

```
' Hide Cursor
iReg.ax = 2
InterruptX &H33, iReg, oReg
```

C/QuickC

```
/* Hide Cursor */
iReg.x.ax = 2;
int86(0x33, &iReg, &oReg);
```

MASM

```
; Hide Cursor
mov ax,2
int 33h
```

MOUSE FUNCTION 3: GET BUTTON STATUS AND MOUSE POSITION

Call with M1% = 3

Returns M2% = button status
M3% = horizontal cursor coordinates
M4% = vertical cursor coordinates

Description Mouse Function 3 returns the state of the left-hand and right-hand mouse buttons. It also returns the state of the cursor's horizontal and vertical virtual-screen coordinates.

The button status is a single-integer value. Bit 0 represents the left-hand button; bit 1 represents the right-hand button. The value of a bit is 1 if the corresponding button is pressed and 0 if it is released.

The cursor coordinates that Function 3 returns are always within the range of minimum and maximum values for the virtual screen or within the range set with Function 7 and Function 8. For more information about the virtual screen, see Chapter 6, "Mouse Programming Interface."

Examples Each of the following program fragments returns the mouse-button status and the current mouse coordinates (in virtual-screen coordinates).

Interpreted Basic4

```

300 ' Get Button Status and Mouse Position
310 '
320 M1% = 3
330 CALL MOUSE(M1%, M2%, M3%, M4%)
340 '
350 PRINT "Mouse virtual-screen coordinates: "; M3%, M4%
360 IF M2% = 0 THEN PRINT "Neither button pressed"
370 IF M2% = 1 THEN PRINT "Left button pressed  "
380 IF M2% = 2 THEN PRINT "Right button pressed  "
390 IF M2% = 3 THEN PRINT "Both buttons pressed  "
400 IF M2% > 3 THEN PRINT "Unexpected number of buttons pressed"

```

QuickBasic

```

' Get Button Status and Mouse Position
iReg.ax = 3
InterruptX &H33, iReg, oReg

PRINT "Mouse virtual-screen coordinates: "; oReg.cx, oReg.dx

SELECT CASE oReg.bx
CASE 0
    PRINT "Neither button pressed"
CASE 1
    PRINT "Left button pressed  "
CASE 2
    PRINT "Right button pressed  "
CASE 3
    PRINT "Both buttons pressed  "
CASE ELSE
    PRINT "Unexpected number of buttons pressed"
END SELECT

```

C/QuickC

```

/* Get Button Status and Mouse Position */
iReg.x.ax = 3;
int86(0x33, &iReg, &oReg);

printf("Mouse virtual-screen coordinates: %d,%d\n",
       oReg.x.cx, oReg.x.dx);

```

(continued)

continued

```

switch (oReg.x.bx)
{
  case 0:
    printf("Neither button pressed\n");
    break;
  case 1:
    printf("Left button pressed  \n");
    break;
  case 2:
    printf("Right button pressed  \n");
    break;
  case 3:
    printf("Both buttons pressed  \n");
    break;
  default:
    printf("Unexpected number of buttons pressed\n");
    break;
}

```

MASM

```

; Get Button Status and Mouse Position
mov ax,3           ; M1% = 3
int 33h

mov mouse_x,cx    ; Mouse x-coordinate = M3%
mov mouse_y,dx    ; Mouse y-coordinate = M4%
mov ax,bx
and ax,1
mov left_button,ax ; Left button = M2%, bit 0
shr bx,1
mov right_button,bx ; Right button = M2%, bit 1

```

MOUSE FUNCTION 4: SET MOUSE CURSOR POSITION

Call with

M1% = 4
M3% = new horizontal cursor coordinate
M4% = new vertical cursor coordinate

Returns Nothing

Description Mouse Function 4 sets the cursor position at the location of the specified horizontal and vertical virtual-screen coordinates. The parameter values must be within the range of minimum and maximum values for the virtual screen or within the range set with Function 7 and Function 8.

The cursor appears at the new location unless one of the following conditions is true:

- Function 1 hasn't yet displayed the cursor.
- Function 2 hid the cursor.
- Function 0 or Function 33 hid the cursor during the reset process.
- The cursor was set to appear in a conditional-off region previously established by using Function 16.

If your program set minimum and maximum vertical and horizontal cursor positions by using Functions 7 and 8, you can include Function 4 to adjust the values you specified in the function call, which places the cursor within the maximum boundaries. For example, assume you used Function 7 to set the minimum horizontal cursor position to 50 and the maximum horizontal cursor position to 90, and you used Function 8 to set the minimum vertical cursor position to 100 and the maximum horizontal cursor position to 150. If you then use Function 4 with a value of (0, 0), the cursor appears at (50, 100). If you use Function 4 with a value of (150, 200), the cursor appears at (90, 150). Therefore, if the horizontal cursor position value or the vertical cursor position value you specify in Function 4 is less than the minimum or greater than the maximum values established when using Functions 7 and 8, Function 4 places the cursor at the nearest corresponding edge inside the boundaries established by Functions 7 and 8.

If the virtual screen is not in a graphics mode with a 1-by-1 cell size, Function 4 rounds the parameter values to the nearest horizontal-coordinate or vertical-coordinate values permitted for the current screen mode. For more information, see Chapter 6, "Mouse Programming Interface."

Examples Each of the following program fragments sets the cursor position to the middle of the screen. Assume that the *HMAX%* and *VMAX%* variables are the values of the maximum virtual-screen coordinates.

Interpreted Basic

```

110 ' Set Mouse Cursor Position
120 M1% = 4
130 M3% = HMAX% \ 2
140 M4% = VMAX% \ 2
150 CALL MOUSE(M1%, M2%, M3%, M4%)

```

QuickBasic

```

' Set Mouse Cursor Position
iReg.ax = 4
iReg.cx = HMAX% \ 2
iReg.dx = VMAX% \ 2
InterruptX &H33, iReg, oReg

```

C/QuickC

```

/* Set Mouse Cursor Position */
iReg.x.ax = 4;
iReg.x.cx = hmax >> 1;           ; hmax / 2
iReg.x.dx = vmax >> 1;           ; vmax / 2
int86(0x33, &iReg, &oReg);

```

MASM

```

; Set Mouse Cursor Position
mov ax,4
mov cx,hmax
shr cx,1           ; hmax / 2
mov dx,vmax
shr dx,1           ; vmax / 2
int 33h

```

MOUSE FUNCTION 5: GET BUTTON PRESS INFORMATION

Call with M1% = 5
M2% = button

Returns M1% = button status
M2% = number of button presses
M3% = horizontal cursor coordinate at last press
M4% = vertical cursor coordinate at last press

Description Mouse Function 5 returns the following:

- The current status of both buttons.
- The number of times you pressed the specified button since the last call to this function.
- The cursor's horizontal and vertical coordinates the last time you pressed the specified button.

The *M2%* parameter specifies which button Function 5 checks. If the value of this parameter is 0, Function 5 checks the status of the left-hand button. If the value of this parameter is 1, Function 5 checks the status of the right-hand button.

The button status is a single-integer value. Bit 0 represents the left-hand button, and bit 1 represents the right-hand button. The value of a bit is 1 if the corresponding button is pressed and 0 if it is released.

The number of button presses always ranges from 0 through 65,535. Function 5 doesn't detect overflow, and it sets the count to 0 after the call.

The values for the horizontal and vertical coordinates are in the ranges defined by the virtual screen. These values represent the cursor position when you last pressed the button, not the cursor's current position.

Examples Each of the following program fragments returns button-press information for the left-hand mouse button, accumulated since your program last called this function.

Interpreted Basic

```

110 ' Get Button Press Information
120 '
130 M1% = 5
140 M2% = 0           'Check left button
150 CALL MOUSE(M1%, M2%, M3%, M4%)
160 '
170 PRINT "Left button presses: "; M2%
180 PRINT "Horizontal position at last press: "; M3%
190 PRINT "Vertical position at last press: "; M4%
```


QuickBasic

```
' Get Button Press Information
iReg.ax = 5
iReg.bx = 0           'Check left button
InterruptX &H33, iReg, oReg

PRINT "Left button presses: "; oReg.bx
PRINT "Horizontal position at last press: "; oReg.cx
PRINT "Vertical position at last press: "; oReg.dx
```

C/QuickC

```
/* Get Button Press Information */
iReg.x.ax = 5;
iReg.x.bx = 0;           /* Check left button */
int86(0x33, &iReg, &oReg);

printf("Left button presses: %d\n", oReg.x.bx);
printf("Horizontal position at last press: %d\n", oReg.x.cx);
printf("Vertical position at last press: %d\n", oReg.x.dx);
```

MASM

```
; Get Button Press Information
mov ax,5
xor bx,bx           ; Check left button
int 33h

mov leftpresses,bx ; Number of left button presses = M2%
mov mousex,cx     ; Mouse x-coordinate at last press = M3%
mov mousey,dx     ; Mouse y-coordinate at last press = M4%
```

MOUSE FUNCTION 6: GET BUTTON RELEASE INFORMATION

Call with M1% = 6
 M2% = button

Returns M1% = button status
 M2% = number of button releases
 M3% = horizontal cursor coordinate at last release
 M4% = vertical cursor coordinate at last release

Description Mouse Function 6 returns the following:

- The current status of both buttons.
- The number of times you released the specified button since the last call to this function.
- The cursor's horizontal and vertical coordinates the last time you released the specified button.

The *M2%* parameter specifies which button Function 6 checks. If the value of this parameter is 0, Function 6 checks the left-hand button. If the value of this parameter is 1, Function 6 checks the right-hand button.

The button status is a single-integer value. Bit 0 represents the left-hand button, and bit 1 represents the right-hand button. The value of a bit is 1 if the corresponding button is pressed and 0 if it is released.

The number of button releases always ranges from 0 through 65,535. Function 6 doesn't detect overflow, and it sets the count to 0 after the call.

The values for the horizontal and vertical coordinates are in the ranges defined by the virtual screen. These values represent the cursor position when you last released the button, not the cursor's current position.

Examples Each of the following program fragments returns button-release information for the left-hand mouse button, accumulated since your program last called this function.

Interpreted Basic

```

410 ' Get Button Release Information
420 '
430 M1% = 6
440 M2% = 0           'Check left button
450 CALL MOUSE(M1%, M2%, M3%, M4%)
460 '
470 PRINT "Left button releases: "; M2%
480 PRINT "Horizontal position at last release: "; M3%
490 PRINT "Vertical position at last release: "; M4%
```

QuickBasic

```
' Get Button Release Information
iReg.ax = 6
iReg.bx = 0           'Check left button
InterruptX &H33, iReg, oReg

PRINT "Left button releases: "; oReg.bx
PRINT "Horizontal position at last release: "; oReg.cx
PRINT "Vertical position at last release: "; oReg.dx
```

C/QuickC

```
/* Get Button Release Information */
iReg.x.ax = 6;
iReg.x.bx = 0;           /* Check left button */
int86(0x33, &iReg, &oReg);

printf("Left button releases: %d\n", oReg.x.bx);
printf("Horizontal position at last release: %d\n", oReg.x.cx);
printf("Vertical position at last release: %d\n", oReg.x.dx);
```

MASM

```
; Get Button Release Information
mov ax,6
xor bx,bx           ; Check left button
int 33h

mov leftreleases,bx ; Number of left button releases = M2%
mov mousex,cx      ; Mouse x-coordinate at last release = M3%
mov mousey,dx      ; Mouse y-coordinate at last release = M4%
```

MOUSE FUNCTION 7: SET MINIMUM AND MAXIMUM HORIZONTAL CURSOR POSITION

Call with M1% = 7
M3% = minimum position
M4% = maximum position

Returns Nothing

Description Mouse Function 7 sets the position of the minimum and maximum horizontal cursor coordinates on the screen. Thus, a call to Function 7 restricts all cursor movement to the specified area. The resolution of the current virtual screen defines the minimum and maximum values. For more information about the virtual screen, see Chapter 6, “Mouse Programming Interface.” See Function 49 for information about returning minimum/maximum cursor position.

NOTE: If the minimum value is greater than the maximum value, Function 7 interchanges the two values.

Examples Each of the following program fragments limits cursor movement to the middle half of the screen (see Figure 8-1). Assume that the *HMAX%* variable is the maximum virtual-screen horizontal coordinate.

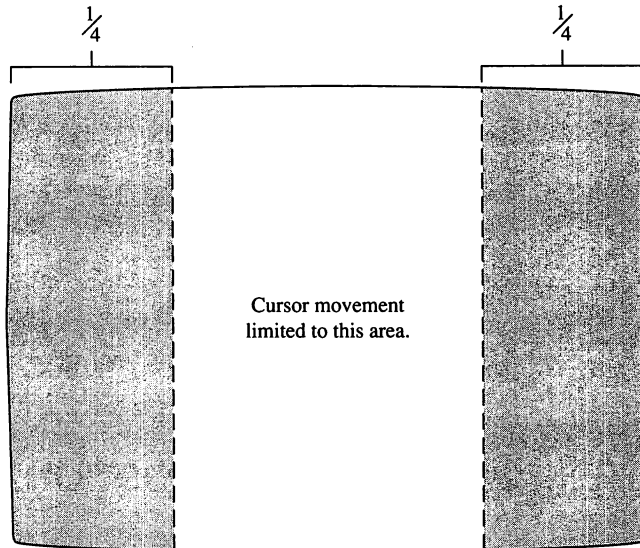


Figure 8-1. *Cursor movement limited to the middle half of the screen.*

Interpreted Basic

```

110 ' Set Minimum and Maximum Horizontal Cursor Position
120 M1% = 7
130 M3% = HMAX% \ 4
140 M4% = 3 * HMAX% \ 4
150 CALL MOUSE(M1%, M2%, M3%, M4%)

```

QuickBasic

```
' Set Minimum and Maximum Horizontal Cursor Position
iReg.ax = 7
iReg.cx = hmax% \ 4
iReg.dx = 3 * hmax% \ 4
InterruptX &H33, iReg, oReg
```

C/QuickC

```
/* Set Minimum and Maximum Horizontal Cursor Position */
iReg.x.ax = 7;
iReg.x.cx = hmax / 4;
iReg.x.dx = 3 * hmax / 4;
int86(0x33, &iReg, &oReg);
```

MASM

```
; Set Minimum and Maximum Horizontal Cursor Position
mov ax, 7
mov cx, hmax
shr cx, 1           ; hmax / 2
mov dx, cx         ; 2 * hmax / 4
shr cx, 1           ; hmax / 4
add dx, cx         ; 3 * hmax / 4
int 33h
```

MOUSE FUNCTION 8: SET MINIMUM AND MAXIMUM VERTICAL CURSOR POSITION

Call with

- M1% = 8
- M3% = minimum position
- M4% = maximum position

Returns Nothing

Description Mouse Function 8 sets the position of the minimum and maximum vertical cursor coordinates on the screen. Thus, a call to Function 8 restricts all cursor movement to the specified area. The resolution of the current virtual screen defines the minimum and maximum values.

For more information about the virtual screen, see Chapter 6, “Mouse Programming Interface.” See Function 49 for information about returning minimum/maximum cursor position.

NOTE: If the minimum value is greater than the maximum value, Function 8 interchanges the two values.

Examples Each of the following program fragments limits cursor movement to the middle half of the screen (see Figure 8-2). Assume that the *VMAX%* variable is the maximum virtual-screen vertical coordinate.

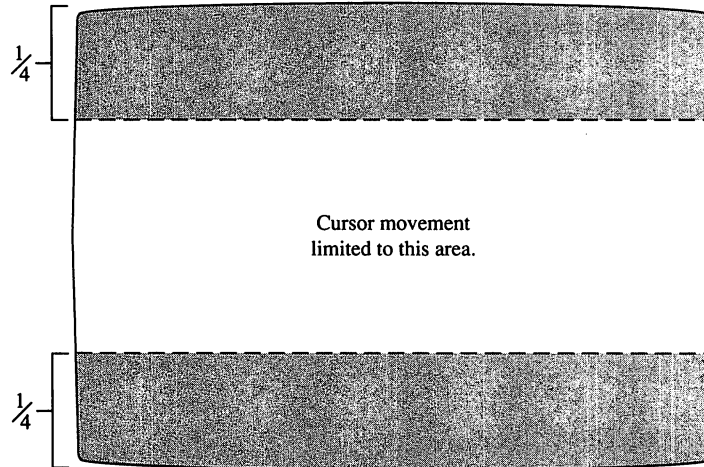


Figure 8-2. *Cursor movement limited to the middle half of the screen.*

Interpreted Basic

```

110 * Set Minimum and Maximum Vertical Cursor Position
120 M1% = 8
130 M3% = VMAX% \ 4
140 M4% = 3 * VMAX% \ 4
150 CALL MOUSE(M1%, M2%, M3%, M4%)

```

QuickBasic

```

* Set Minimum and Maximum Vertical Cursor Position
iReg.ax = 8
iReg.cx = VMAX% \ 4
iReg.dx = 3 * VMAX% \ 4
InterruptX &H33, iReg, oReg

```

C/QuickC

```

/* Set Minimum and Maximum Vertical Cursor Position */
iReg.x.ax = 8;
iReg.x.cx = vmax / 4;
iReg.x.dx = 3 * vmax / 4;
int86(0x33, &iReg, &oReg);

```

MASM

```

; Set Minimum and Maximum Vertical Cursor Position
mov ax, 8
mov cx, vmax
shr cx, 1 ; vmax / 2
mov dx, cx ; 2 * vmax / 4
shr cx, 1 ; vmax / 4
add dx, cx ; 3 * vmax / 4
int 33h

```

MOUSE FUNCTION 9: SET GRAPHICS CURSOR BLOCK

Call with

- M1% = 9
- M2% = horizontal cursor hot spot
- M3% = vertical cursor hot spot
- M4% = pointer to screen and cursor masks

Returns Nothing

Description Mouse Function 9 defines the shape, color, and center of the graphics cursor (the cursor used when your computer is in graphics mode). Function 9 doesn't automatically display the cursor. To make the cursor visible, your program must call Function 1 (Show Cursor).

The cursor hot-spot values define one pixel relative to the upper left corner of the cursor block. Although the values within the cursor block can range from -128 through 127, they usually range from 0 through 15.

Function 9 uses the values found in the screen mask and the cursor mask to build the cursor shape and color. To pass the screen and cursor masks, you assign their values to an integer array (packed 2 bytes per integer). You then use the address of the first element of the array as the *M4%* parameter in the function call.

For more information about the screen mask, the cursor mask, and the graphics cursor hot spot, see Chapter 6, “Mouse Programming Interface.”

Examples Each of the following program fragments creates a graphics-mode cursor shaped like a hand. The hot spot is at the tip of the extended index finger.

Interpreted Basic

```

110 ' Set Graphics Cursor Block
120 '
130 DIM CURSOR(15, 1)
140 '
141 ' Screen mask
150 CURSOR(0, 0) = &HE1FF          '1110000111111111
160 CURSOR(1, 0) = &HE1FF          '1110000111111111
170 CURSOR(2, 0) = &HE1FF          '1110000111111111
180 CURSOR(3, 0) = &HE1FF          '1110000111111111
190 CURSOR(4, 0) = &HE1FF          '1110000111111111
200 CURSOR(5, 0) = &HE000          '1110000000000000
210 CURSOR(6, 0) = &HE000          '1110000000000000
220 CURSOR(7, 0) = &HE000          '1110000000000000
230 CURSOR(8, 0) = &H0             '0000000000000000
240 CURSOR(9, 0) = &H0             '0000000000000000
250 CURSOR(10, 0) = &H0            '0000000000000000
260 CURSOR(11, 0) = &H0            '0000000000000000
270 CURSOR(12, 0) = &H0            '0000000000000000
280 CURSOR(13, 0) = &H0            '0000000000000000
290 CURSOR(14, 0) = &H0            '0000000000000000
300 CURSOR(15, 0) = &H0            '0000000000000000
310 '
312 ' Cursor mask
320 CURSOR(0, 1) = &H1E00          '0001111000000000
330 CURSOR(1, 1) = &H1200          '0001001000000000
340 CURSOR(2, 1) = &H1200          '0001001000000000
350 CURSOR(3, 1) = &H1200          '0001001000000000
360 CURSOR(4, 1) = &H1200          '0001001000000000
370 CURSOR(5, 1) = &H13FF          '0001001111111111
380 CURSOR(6, 1) = &H1249          '0001001001001001
390 CURSOR(7, 1) = &H1249          '0001001001001001
400 CURSOR(8, 1) = &HF249          '1111001001001001
410 CURSOR(9, 1) = &H9001          '1001000000000001
420 CURSOR(10, 1) = &H9001         '1001000000000001
430 CURSOR(11, 1) = &H9001         '1001000000000001

```

(continued)

continued

```

440 CURSOR(12, 1) = &H8001          '1000000000000001
450 CURSOR(13, 1) = &H8001          '1000000000000001
460 CURSOR(14, 1) = &H8001          '1000000000000001
470 CURSOR(15, 1) = &HFFFF          '1111111111111111
480 '
490 M1% = 9
500 M2% = 5          'Horizontal hot spot
510 M3% = 0          'Vertical hot spot
520 M4% = VARPTR(CURSOR(0,0))      'Versions 6.25 and later
530 CALL MOUSE(M1%, M2%, M3%, M4%)

```

QuickBasic

```

' Set Graphics Cursor Block

' Build the masks
FOR i = 1 TO 32
  READ wrd%
  mask$ = mask$ + MKI$(wrd%)
NEXT i

' Set Graphics Cursor Block
iReg.ax = 9
iReg.bx = 5          'Horizontal hot spot
iReg.cx = 0          'Vertical hot spot
iReg.dx = SADD(mask$) 'Pointer to screen and cursor masks
InterruptX &H33, iReg, oReg

DATA &HE1FF : REM 1110000111111111
DATA &HE1FF : REM 1110000111111111
DATA &HE1FF : REM 1110000111111111
DATA &HE1FF : REM 1110000111111111
DATA &HE1FF : REM 1110000111111111
DATA &HE000 : REM 1110000000000000
DATA &HE000 : REM 1110000000000000
DATA &HE000 : REM 1110000000000000
DATA &H0000 : REM 0000000000000000
DATA &H0000 : REM 0000000000000000
DATA &H0000 : REM 0000000000000000
DATA &H0000 : REM 0000000000000000
DATA &H0000 : REM 0000000000000000
DATA &H0000 : REM 0000000000000000
DATA &H0000 : REM 0000000000000000

```

(continued)

```

DATA &H0000 : REM 0000000000000000
DATA &H0000 : REM 0000000000000000

DATA &H1E00 : REM 0001111000000000
DATA &H1200 : REM 0001001000000000
DATA &H1200 : REM 0001001000000000
DATA &H1200 : REM 0001001000000000
DATA &H1200 : REM 0001001000000000
DATA &H13FF : REM 0001001111111111
DATA &H1249 : REM 0001001001001001
DATA &H1249 : REM 0001001001001001
DATA &HF249 : REM 1111001001001001
DATA &H9001 : REM 1001000000000001
DATA &H9001 : REM 1001000000000001
DATA &H9001 : REM 1001000000000001
DATA &H8001 : REM 1000000000000001
DATA &H8001 : REM 1000000000000001
DATA &H8001 : REM 1000000000000001
DATA &H8001 : REM 1000000000000001
DATA &H8001 : REM 1000000000000001
DATA &H8001 : REM 1000000000000001
DATA &HFFFF : REM 1111111111111111

```

C/QuickC

```

/* Set Graphics Cursor Block */

static int maskshand[] =
{
    /* screen mask */

    0xE1FF, /* 1110000111111111 */
    0xE1FF, /* 1110000111111111 */
    0xE1FF, /* 1110000111111111 */
    0xE1FF, /* 1110000111111111 */
    0xE1FF, /* 1110000111111111 */
    0xE000, /* 1110000000000000 */
    0xE000, /* 1110000000000000 */
    0xE000, /* 1110000000000000 */
    0x0000, /* 0000000000000000 */
    0x0000, /* 0000000000000000 */
    0x0000, /* 0000000000000000 */
    0x0000, /* 0000000000000000 */
    0x0000, /* 0000000000000000 */
    0x0000, /* 0000000000000000 */
    0x0000, /* 0000000000000000 */
    0x0000, /* 0000000000000000 */
    0x0000, /* 0000000000000000 */
    0x0000, /* 0000000000000000 */

```

(continued)

continued

```

/* cursor mask */

0x1E00, /* 0001111000000000 */
0x1200, /* 0001001000000000 */
0x1200, /* 0001001000000000 */
0x1200, /* 0001001000000000 */
0x1200, /* 0001001000000000 */
0x13FF, /* 0001001111111111 */
0x1249, /* 0001001001001001 */
0x1249, /* 0001001001001001 */
0xF249, /* 1111001001001001 */
0x9001, /* 1001000000000001 */
0x9001, /* 1001000000000001 */
0x9001, /* 1001000000000001 */
0x8001, /* 1000000000000001 */
0x8001, /* 1000000000000001 */
0x8001, /* 1000000000000001 */
0xFFFF /* 1111111111111111 */
};

/* Set Graphics Cursor Block */
iReg.x.ax = 9;
iReg.x.bx = 5; /* Horizontal hot spot */
iReg.x.cx = 0; /* Vertical hot spot */
iReg.x.dx = FP_SEG(maskhand); /* Table offset into DX */
segregs.es = FP_SEG(maskhand); /* Table segment into ES */
int86x(0x33, &iReg, &oReg, &segregs);

```

MASM

```

; Set Graphics Cursor Block

hand    dw 0E1FFh ; 1110000111111111
        dw 0E1FFh ; 1110000111111111
        dw 0E1FFh ; 1110000111111111
        dw 0E1FFh ; 1110000111111111
        dw 0E1FFh ; 1110000111111111
        dw 0E000h ; 1110000000000000
        dw 0E000h ; 1110000000000000
        dw 0E000h ; 1110000000000000
        dw 00000h ; 0000000000000000
        dw 00000h ; 0000000000000000
        dw 00000h ; 0000000000000000

```

(continued)

```

dw 0000h ; 0000000000000000
dw 0000h ; 0000000000000000
dw 0000h ; 0000000000000000
dw 0000h ; 0000000000000000
dw 0000h ; 0000000000000000
dw 01E0h ; 0001111000000000
dw 0120h ; 0001001000000000
dw 0120h ; 0001001000000000
dw 0120h ; 0001001000000000
dw 0120h ; 0001001000000000
dw 013Fh ; 0001001111111111
dw 0124h ; 0001001001001001
dw 0124h ; 0001001001001001
dw 0F24h ; 1111001001001001
dw 0900h ; 1001000000000001
dw 0900h ; 1001000000000001
dw 0900h ; 1001000000000001
dw 0800h ; 1000000000000001
dw 0800h ; 1000000000000001
dw 0800h ; 1000000000000001
dw 0FFFh ; 1111111111111111
.
.
.
; Set Graphics Cursor Block
mov ax,9
mov bx,5 ; Hot spot, x
xor cx,cx ; Hot spot, y
mov dx,ds ; Be sure ES is
mov es,dx ; set same as DS
mov dx,OFFSET hand ; Address of bit pattern
int 33h

```

MOUSE FUNCTION 10: SET TEXT CURSOR

Call with

- M1% = 10
- M2% = cursor select
- M3% = screen-mask value or scan-line start
- M4% = cursor-mask value or scan-line stop

Returns Nothing

Description Mouse Function 10 selects the software text cursor or the hardware text cursor. Before your program can call Function 10, it must call Function 1 (Show Cursor) to display the cursor.

The value of the *M2%* parameter specifies which cursor you want to select. If the value of *M2%* is 0, Function 10 selects the software text cursor. If the value of *M2%* is 1, Function 10 selects the hardware text cursor.

If Function 10 selects the software text cursor, the *M3%* and *M4%* parameters must specify the screen mask and the cursor mask. These masks define the attributes of a character when the cursor overlays it. The screen-mask and cursor-mask values depend on the type of display adapter in the computer.

If Function 10 selects the hardware text cursor, the *M3%* and *M4%* parameters must specify the line numbers of the cursor's first and last scan lines. These line numbers depend on the type of display adapter in the computer.

NOTE: For more information about the software text cursor and the hardware text cursor, see Chapter 6, "Mouse Programming Interface."

Examples Each of the following program fragments sets the software text cursor, which transposes the foreground and background colors.

Interpreted Basic

```

110 ' Set Text Cursor
120 M1% = 10
130 M2% = 0                'Select software text cursor
140 M3% = &HFFFF          'Screen mask
150 M4% = &H7700          'Cursor mask
160 CALL MOUSE(M1%, M2%, M3%, M4%)

```

QuickBasic

```

' Set Text Cursor
iReg.ax = 10
iReg.bx = 0                'Select software text cursor
iReg.cx = &HFFFF          'Screen mask
iReg.dx = &H7700          'Cursor mask
InterruptX &H33, iReg, oReg

```

C/QuickC

```

/* Set Text Cursor */
iReg.x.ax = 10;
iReg.x.bx = 0;           /* Select software text cursor */
iReg.x.cx = 0xFFFF;    /* Screen mask */
iReg.x.dx = 0x7700;    /* Cursor mask */
int86(0x33, &iReg, &oReg);

```

MASM

```

; Set Text Cursor
mov ax,10
xor bx,bx                ; Select software text cursor
mov cx,0FFFFh           ; Screen mask
mov dx,7700h            ; Cursor mask
int 33h

```

MOUSE FUNCTION 11: READ MOUSE MOTION COUNTERS

Call with M1% = 11

Returns M3% = horizontal mickey count
M4% = vertical mickey count

Description Mouse Function 11 returns the horizontal and vertical mickey counts since your program last called this function. The mickey count is the distance that the mouse has moved in mickey units ($\frac{1}{200}$ -inch increments for the 200 ppi mouse and $\frac{1}{400}$ -inch increments for the 400 ppi mouse). For more information about the mickey, see Chapter 6, “Mouse Programming Interface.”

The mickey count always ranges from $-32,768$ through $32,767$. A positive horizontal count indicates motion to the right, whereas a negative horizontal count indicates motion to the left. A positive vertical count indicates motion to the bottom of the screen, whereas a negative vertical count indicates motion to the top of the screen.

Function 11 ignores overflow, and it sets the mickey count to 0 after the call is completed.

Examples Each of the following program fragments returns the horizontal and vertical mickey counts since your program last called this function.

Interpreted Basic

```

100 ' Read Mouse Motion Counters
110 '
120 M1% = 11
130 CALL MOUSE(M1%, M2%, M3%, M4%)
140 '
150 PRINT "Horizontal mickey count: "; M3%
160 PRINT "Vertical mickey count: "; M4%
```

QuickBasic

```

' Read Mouse Motion Counters
iReg.ax = 11
InterruptX &H33, iReg, oReg

PRINT "Horizontal mickey count: "; oReg.cx
PRINT "Vertical mickey count: "; oReg.dx
```

C/QuickC

```

/* Read Mouse Motion Counters */
iReg.x.ax = 11;
int86(0x33, &iReg, &oReg);

printf("Horizontal mickey count: %d\n", oReg.x.cx);
printf("Vertical mickey count: %d\n", oReg.x.dx);
```

MASM

```

; Read Mouse Motion Counters
mov ax,11 ; M1% = 11
int 33h

mov mickeyx,cx ; Horizontal mickeys
mov mickeyy,dx ; Vertical mickeys
```

MOUSE FUNCTION 12: SET INTERRUPT SUBROUTINE CALL MASK AND ADDRESS

Call with *M1%* = 12
 M3% = call mask
 M4% = subroutine address

Returns Nothing

Description Mouse Function 12 sets the subroutine call mask and the subroutine address for mouse hardware interrupts.

A mouse hardware interrupt stops your program's execution and calls the specified subroutine whenever one or more of the conditions defined by the call mask occurs. When the subroutine ends, your program continues execution at the point of interruption.

The call mask is a single-integer value that defines which conditions cause an interrupt. Each bit in the call mask corresponds to a specific condition, as shown in the following table:

Mask Bit	Condition
0	Cursor position changed
1	Left-hand button pressed
2	Left-hand button released
3	Right-hand button pressed
4	Right-hand button released
5–15	Not used

To enable the subroutine for a given condition, set the corresponding call-mask bit to 1 and pass the mask as the *M3%* parameter.

To disable the subroutine for a given condition, set the value of the corresponding bit to 0, and pass the mask as the *M3%* parameter.

Your program can set any combination of one or more bits in the call mask. When any one of the indicated conditions is detected, the mouse hardware interrupt calls the subroutine. The subroutine determines which condition occurred by inspecting the bits passed in the CX register. The indicated conditions are ignored when you set the value of the call-mask bits to 0.

A call to Function 0 sets the value of the call mask to 0.

Before your program ends, be sure it sets the value of the interrupt call mask to 0. (This is handled automatically if your program calls Function 0.) If the call mask and subroutine remain defined when the program is no longer running, the subroutine will still execute if one of the conditions defined by the call mask occurs.

When the mouse software makes a call to the subroutine, it loads the following information into the microprocessor's registers:

Register	Information
AX	Condition mask (similar to the call mask except that a bit is set only if the condition occurs)
BX	Button state
CX	Horizontal cursor coordinate
DX	Vertical cursor coordinate
SI	Horizontal mouse counts (mickeys)
DI	Vertical mouse counts (mickeys)

NOTE: The DS register, which contains the mouse-driver data segment, does not appear in this list. The interrupt subroutine is responsible for setting the DS register as needed. Because the mouse driver loads the hardware registers directly, we recommend that you use assembly language to create your Function 12 routine so that registers can be manipulated easily.

Using Function 12 from Within Programs

To use Function 12 with interpreted Basic programs,

1. Load an assembly language subroutine into the Basic interpreter's data segment. All exits from the subroutine must use a FAR return instruction.
2. Pass the subroutine's address to Function 12 as the fourth parameter (*M4%*).

To use Function 12 with QuickBasic programs,

1. Load an assembly language subroutine into QuickBasic's data segment. You can load the subroutine into a string or into a COMMON array.
2. Pass the subroutine's address to Function 12 as the fourth parameter (*M4%*). The VARPTR function returns the address of an array.

To use Function 12 with C or QuickC programs,

1. Use the appropriate mouse call for the memory model of your program. Use *cmouses* for small-model programs, use *cmousec* for compact-model programs, use *cmousem* for medium-model programs, and use *cmousel* for large-model and huge-model programs.
2. Pass the offset part of the subroutine's address in the fourth parameter (*M4%*). If you want to call the mouse interrupt directly, place the segment part of the address in the ES register.

To use Function 12 with MASM programs, move the segment of the subroutine into the ES register, the offset into the DX register, the call mask into the CX register, and the mouse function number (12) into the AX register.

Examples Each of the following short programs calls Function 12 to activate an interrupt-driven subroutine for the mouse. When you press the right-hand mouse button, the mouse cursor moves to the upper left corner of the screen.

Interpreted Basic

```

100 ' Set Interrupt Subroutine Call Mask and Address
110 ' Mouse Reset and Status
120 M1% = 0
130 CALL MOUSE(M1%, M2%, M3%, M4%)
140 '
150 ' Show Cursor
160 M1% = 1
170 CALL MOUSE(M1%, M2%, M3%, M4%)
180 '
190 ' Build interrupt-driven subroutine to activate Function 12
200 DIM MSUB%(5)
210 MSUB%(0) = &H4B8           ' Subroutine is from this code...
220 MSUB%(1) = &HB900         '   MOV AX,4 ; Function 4, Set Mouse Cursor
230 MSUB%(2) = &H0           '   MOV CX,0 ; Left edge of screen
240 MSUB%(3) = &HBA         '   MOV DX,0 ; Top edge of screen
250 MSUB%(4) = &HCD00        '   INT 33h ; Mouse interrupt
260 MSUB%(5) = &HCB33        '   RETF ; Return to BASIC
270 '
280 ' Set Interrupt Subroutine Call Mask and Address
290 M1% = 12                 ' Mouse Function 12

```

(continued)

continued

```

300 M3% = 8           ' Interrupt when right button pressed
310 CALL MOUSE(M1%, M2%, M3%, MSUB%(0)) ' Mouse driver versions before 6.25
320 ' M4% = VARPTR(MSUB%(0))           ' Mouse driver versions 6.25 and later
330 ' CALL MOUSE(M1%, M2%, M3%, M4%)   ' Mouse driver versions 6.25 and later
340 '
350 ' Loop until key is pressed, allowing mouse testing
360 IF INKEY$="" THEN GOTO 410
370 '
380 ' Reset the mouse to deactivate the interrupt
390 M1% = 0
400 CALL MOUSE(M1%, M2%, M3%, M4%)
410 '
420 END

```

QuickBasic

```

' Set Interrupt Subroutine Call Mask and Address

' Build interrupt-driven subroutine to activate Function 12
DIM msub%(5)
COMMON msub%()
msub%(0) = &H4B8           ' Subroutine is from this code...
msub%(1) = &HB900         ' MOV AX,4 ; Function 4, Set Mouse Cursor
msub%(2) = &H0            ' MOV CX,0 ; Left edge of screen
msub%(3) = &HBA           ' MOV DX,0 ; Top edge of screen
msub%(4) = &HCD00         ' INT 33h ; Mouse interrupt
msub%(5) = &HCB33         ' RETF ; Return to QuickBasic

' Mouse Reset and Status
iReg.ax = 0
InterruptX &H33, iReg, oReg

' Show Cursor
iReg.ax = 1
InterruptX &H33, iReg, oReg

' Set Interrupt Subroutine Call Mask and Address
iReg.ax = 12
iReg.cx = 8           ' Interrupt when right button pressed
iReg.dx = VARPTR(msub%(0))
InterruptX &H33, iReg, oReg

```

(continued)

```

' Wait until any key is pressed
DO
LOOP WHILE INKEY$ = ""

' Reset mouse to deactivate the interrupt
iReg.ax = 0
InterruptX &H33, iReg, oReg

END

```

C/QuickC

```

/* Set Interrupt Subroutine Call Mask and Address */

#include <dos.h>
#include <conio.h>

union REGS iReg,oReg;
struct SREGS segregs;
/* This is the sub to be activated with the right mouse button */
void far msub()
{
    iReg.x.ax = 4;           /* Function 4: Set Mouse Cursor */
    iReg.x.cx = 0;         /* Left edge of screen */
    iReg.x.dx = 0;         /* Top edge of screen */
    int86(0x33, &iReg, &oReg); /* Moves cursor to upper left corner */
}

main()
{
    printf("\n\nDemonstration of mouse Function 12...\n");
    printf("Press any key to quit\n");

    /* Mouse Reset and Status */
    iReg.x.ax = 0;
    int86(0x33, &iReg, &oReg);

    /* Show Cursor */
    iReg.x.ax = 1;
    int86(0x33, &iReg, &oReg);
}

```

(continued)

continued

```

/* Set Interrupt Subroutine Call Mask and Address */
iReg.x.ax = 12;           /* Mouse Function 12 is called */
iReg.x.cx = 8;           /* when right button is pressed */
iReg.x.dx = FP_OFF(msub); /* Offset of msub() into DX */
segregs.es = FP_SEG(msub); /* Segment of msub() into ES */
int86x(0x33, &iReg, &oReg, &segregs);

/* Wait for a key press */
getch();

/* Reset the mouse to deactivate the interrupt */
iReg.x.ax = 0;
int86(0x33, &iReg, &oReg);
}

```

MASM

```

; Set Interrupt Subroutine Call Mask and Address

.MODEL LARGE
.STACK 100h
.CODE

; This is the subroutine activated by the right mouse button
msub PROC
    mov ax,4           ; Function 4, Set Mouse Cursor
    xor cx,cx         ; Left edge of screen
    mov dx,cx         ; Top edge of screen
    int 33h          ; Move the cursor
    ret
msub ENDP

; Set up DS for the data segment
start: mov ax,@DATA
       mov ds,ax

; Mouse Reset and Status
xor ax,ax
int 33h

```

(continued)

```

; Show Cursor
mov ax,1
int 33h

; Set Interrupt Subroutine Call Mask and Address
mov ax,SEG msub
mov es,ax           ; Offset of sub into ES
mov ax,12          ; Mouse Function 12
mov cx,8           ; Interrupt when right button released
mov dx,OFFSET msub ; Segment of sub into DX
int 33h

; Wait for a keypress, allowing testing of mouse
mov ah,8
int 21h

; Reset the mouse to deactivate the interrupt
xor ax,ax
int 33h

; Exit to MS-DOS
mov ax,4C00H       ; Exit no error
int 21h

END start

```

MOUSE FUNCTION 13: LIGHT-PEN EMULATION MODE ON

Call with M1% = 13

Returns Nothing

Description Mouse Function 13 lets the mouse emulate a light pen. After your program calls Function 13, calls to the PEN function return the cursor position at the last *pen down*.

The mouse buttons control the *pen down* and *pen off the screen* states. The pen is down when you press both mouse buttons. The pen is off the screen when you release either mouse button.

The mouse software enables the light-pen emulation mode after each reset (Function 0).

Examples Each of the following program fragments enables the light-pen emulation mode.

Interpreted Basic

```

110 ' Light-Pen Emulation Mode On
120 M1% = 13
130 CALL MOUSE(M1%, M2%, M3%, M4%)

```

QuickBasic

```

' Light-Pen Emulation Mode On
iReg.ax = 13
InterruptX &H33, iReg, oReg

```

C/QuickC

```

/* Light-Pen Emulation Mode On */
iReg.x.ax = 13;
int86(0x33, &iReg, &oReg);

```

MASM

```

Light-Pen Emulation Mode On
mov ax,13
int 33h

```

MOUSE FUNCTION 14: LIGHT-PEN EMULATION MODE OFF

Call with M1% = 14

Returns Nothing

Description Mouse Function 14 disables light-pen emulation. After your program calls Function 14, calls to the PEN function return information about the light pen only.

If a program uses both a light pen and a mouse, the program must disable the mouse light-pen emulation mode in order to work correctly.

Examples Each of the following program fragments disables the light-pen emulation mode.

Interpreted Basic

```

110 ' Light-Pen Emulation Mode Off
120 M1% = 14
130 CALL MOUSE(M1%, M2%, M3%, M4%)

```

QuickBasic

```

' Light-Pen Emulation Mode Off
iReg.ax = 14
InterruptX &H33, iReg, oReg

```

C/QuickC

```

/* Light-Pen Emulation Mode Off */
iReg.x.ax = 14;
int86(0x33, &iReg, &oReg);

```

MASM

```

; Light-Pen Emulation Mode Off
mov ax,14
int 33h

```

MOUSE FUNCTION 15: SET MICKEY/PIXEL RATIO

Call with

M1%	=	15
M3%	=	horizontal mickey/pixel ratio
M4%	=	vertical mickey/pixel ratio

Returns Nothing

Description Mouse Function 15 sets the mickey-per-pixel ratio for horizontal and vertical mouse motion. The ratios specify the number of mickeys for every 8 virtual-screen pixels. The values must range from 1 through 32,767. For more information about the mickey, see Chapter 6, “Mouse Programming Interface.”

The default value for the horizontal ratio is 8 mickeys to 8 virtual-screen pixels. The default value for the vertical ratio is 16 mickeys to 8 virtual-screen pixels.

Later in this chapter, you'll see that Function 26 (Set Mouse Sensitivity) combines Function 15 and Function 19 (Set Double-Speed Threshold) and lets you set the mouse-sensitivity parameters in one function call instead of two.

Examples Each of the following program fragments sets the mickey-per-pixel horizontal ratio to 16 to 8 and the vertical ratio to 32 to 8, thus setting the cursor to half speed.

Interpreted Basic

```
110 ' Set Mickey/Pixel Ratio
120 M1% = 15
130 M3% = 16           'Horizontal ratio
140 M4% = 32           'Vertical ratio
150 CALL MOUSE(M1%, M2%, M3%, M4%)
```

QuickBasic

```
' Set Mickey/Pixel Ratio
iReg.ax = 15
iReg.cx = 16           'Horizontal ratio
iReg.dx = 32           'Vertical ratio
InterruptX &H33, iReg, oReg
```

C/QuickC

```
/* Set Mickey/Pixel Ratio */
iReg.x.ax = 15;
iReg.x.cx = 16;           /* Horizontal ratio */
iReg.x.dx = 32;           /* Vertical ratio */
int86(0x33, &iReg, &oReg);
```

MASM

```
; Set Mickey/Pixel Ratio
mov ax,15
mov cx,16                ;horizontal ratio
mov dx,32                ;vertical ratio
int 33h
```

MOUSE FUNCTION 16: CONDITIONAL OFF

Call with M1% = 16
M4% = address of the region array

Returns Nothing

Description Mouse Function 16 defines a region you want to update on the screen. If the cursor appears in the defined region or moves into it, Function 16 hides the cursor during the updating process. When Function 16 ends, your program must call Function 1 (Show Cursor) to redisplay the cursor.

Function 16 defines a region by placing the screen-coordinate values in a four-element array. The following table defines the elements of the array:

Array Offset	Value
1	Left x screen coordinate
2	Top y screen coordinate
3	Right x screen coordinate
4	Bottom y screen coordinate

Function 16 is similar to Function 2 (Hide Cursor), but you can use Function 16 for advanced applications that require faster screen updates.

In the QuickBasic, C/QuickC, and MASM examples, notice that the elements of the array are loaded into registers CX, DX, SI, and DI when you use Interrupt 33H. Compare this with the interpreted Basic example, which passes the address of an integer array that defines the region.

Examples Each of the following program fragments hides the cursor if it moves into the upper left corner of the screen.

Interpreted Basic

```
200 ' Conditional Off
210 '
220 DIM REGION%(4)
```

(continued)

continued

```

230 REGION%(0) = 0
240 REGION%(1) = 0
250 REGION%(2) = 64
260 REGION%(3) = 20
270 M1% = 16
280 M4% = VARPTR (REGION%(0)) 'Versions 6.25 and later
290 CALL MOUSE(M1%, M2%, M3%, M4%)

```

QuickBasic

```

' Conditional Off
iReg.ax = 16
iReg.cx = 0           ' Left x
iReg.dx = 0           ' Upper y
iReg.si = 64          ' Right x
iReg.di = 20          ' Lower y
InterruptX &H33, iReg, oReg

```

C/QuickC

```

/* Conditional Off */
iReg.x.ax = 16;
iReg.x.cx = 0;           /* Left x */
iReg.x.dx = 0;           /* Upper y */
iReg.x.si = 64;          /* Right x */
iReg.x.di = 20;          /* Lower y */
int86(0x33, &iReg, &oReg);

```

MASM

```

; Conditional Off
mov ax,16
xor cx,cx           ; Left x
mov dx,cx           ; Upper y
mov si,64           ; Right x
mov di,20           ; Lower y
int 33h

```

MOUSE FUNCTION 19: SET DOUBLE-SPEED THRESHOLD

Call with *M1%* = 19
 M4% = threshold speed in mickeys per second

Returns Nothing

Description Mouse Function 19 sets the threshold speed for doubling the cursor's motion on the screen. This function makes it easier for you to point the cursor at images that appear far apart on the screen.

The *M4%* parameter defines the mouse's threshold speed. If you specify a value of 0 or if your program calls Function 0 (Mouse Reset and Status) or Function 33 (Software Reset) to reset the mouse, Function 19 assigns a default value of 64 mickeys per second. If you move the mouse faster than the value of the *M4%* parameter, cursor motion doubles in speed. The threshold speed remains set until your program calls Function 19 again or until Function 0 resets the mouse.

Once your program turns the speed-doubling feature on, the feature remains activated. Your program can effectively turn this feature off by calling Function 19 again and setting the *M4%* parameter to a speed faster than the mouse can physically move (for example, 10,000 mickeys per second).

Later in this chapter, you'll learn that Function 26 (Set Mouse Sensitivity) combines Function 15 (Set Mickey/Pixel Ratio) and Function 19, letting you set the mouse-sensitivity parameters by making one function call instead of two.

Examples Each of the following program fragments sets the double-speed threshold to 32 mickeys per second. Later, it sets the threshold to a value that effectively turns the speed-doubling feature off.

Interpreted Basic

```
110 ' Set Double-Speed Threshold
120 M1% = 19
130 M4% = 32
140 CALL MOUSE(M1%, M2%, M3%, M4%)
.
.
.
220 M1% = 19
230 M4% = 10000
240 CALL MOUSE(M1%, M2%, M3%, M4%)
```

QuickBasic

```
' Set Double-Speed Threshold
iReg.ax = 19
iReg.dx = 32
InterruptX &H33, iReg, oReg
.
.
.
iReg.ax = 19
iReg.dx = 10000
InterruptX &H33, iReg, oReg
```

C/QuickC

```
/* Set Double-Speed Threshold */
iReg.x.ax = 19;
iReg.x.dx = 32;
int86(0x33, &iReg, &oReg);
.
.
.
iReg.x.ax = 19;
iReg.x.dx = 10000;
int86(0x33, &iReg, &oReg);
```

MASM

```
; Set Double-Speed Threshold
mov ax,19
mov dx,32
int 33h
.
.
.
mov ax,19
mov dx,10000
int 33h
```

MOUSE FUNCTION 20: SWAP INTERRUPT SUBROUTINES

Call with

- M1% = 20
- M2% = segment of new subroutine
- M3% = new call mask
- M4% = offset of new subroutine

Returns

- M2% = segment of old subroutine
- M3% = old call mask
- M4% = offset of old subroutine

Description Mouse Function 20 sets new values for the call mask and the subroutine address for mouse hardware interrupts. It also returns the values that you previously specified.

A mouse hardware interrupt stops your program's execution and calls the specified subroutine whenever one or more of the conditions defined by the call mask occurs. When the subroutine ends, your program continues execution at the point of interruption.

The call mask is an integer value that defines which conditions cause an interrupt. Each bit in the call mask corresponds to a specific condition, as shown in the following table:

Mask Bit	Condition
0	Cursor position changed
1	Left button pressed
2	Left button released
3	Right button pressed
4	Right button released
5–15	Not used

To enable the subroutine for a given condition, set the corresponding call-mask bit to 1, and pass the mask as the *M3%* parameter.

To disable the subroutine for a given condition, set the value of the corresponding bit to 0, and pass the mask as the *M3%* parameter.

Your program can set any combination of one or more bits in the call mask. When any one of the indicated conditions is detected, the mouse hardware interrupt calls the subroutine. The subroutine determines which condition occurred by inspecting the bits passed in the CX register. The indicated conditions are ignored when you set the value of the call-mask bits to 0.

Before your program ends, be sure to restore the initial values of the call mask and the subroutine address by calling Function 0.

When the mouse software makes a call to the subroutine, it loads the following information into the central processing unit's registers:

Register	Information
AX	Condition mask (similar to the call mask except that a bit is set only if the condition occurs)
BX	Button state
CX	Horizontal cursor coordinate
DX	Vertical cursor coordinate
SI	Horizontal mouse counts (mickeys)
DI	Vertical mouse counts (mickeys)

NOTE: The DS register, which contains the mouse-driver data segments, does not appear in this list. The interrupt subroutine is responsible for setting the DS register as needed. Because the mouse driver loads the hardware directly, we recommend that you use assembly language to create your Function 20 routine so that registers can be manipulated easily.

Using Function 20 from Within Programs

To use Function 20 with interpreted Basic programs,

1. Load an assembly language subroutine into the Basic interpreter's data segment. All exits from the subroutine must use a FAR return instruction.
2. Pass the subroutine's entry address to Function 20 as the fourth parameter (*M4%*).
3. Pass 0 in the second parameter (*M2%*). This is a signal to the mouse driver that the subroutine is in Basic's data segment.

To use Function 20 with QuickBasic programs,

1. Load an assembly language subroutine into QuickBasic's data segment. You can load the subroutine into a string or into a COMMON array.
2. Pass the subroutine's address to Function 20 as the fourth parameter (*M4%*). The VARPTR function returns the address of an array.

3. Pass the segment of the subroutine in the second parameter (*M2%*). The VARSEG function returns the segment of any QuickBasic variable.

To use Function 20 with C or QuickC programs,

1. Use the appropriate mouse call for the memory model of your program. Use *cmouses* for small-model programs, *cmousec* for compact-model programs, *cmousem* for medium-model programs, and *cmousel* for large-model and huge-model programs.
2. Pass the offset part of the subroutine's address in the fourth parameter (*M4%*).
3. Pass the segment part of the subroutine's address in the second parameter (*M2%*).

To use Function 20 with MASM programs, move the segment of the subroutine into the ES register, the offset into the DX register, the call mask into the CX register, and the mouse function number (20) into the AX register.

Examples Each of the following program fragments swaps a new interrupt subroutine with the current subroutine. The mouse hardware interrupt calls the new subroutine when you release the left-hand mouse button. The subroutine moves the cursor to the middle of the screen.

Interpreted Basic

```

100 ' Swap Interrupt Subroutines
.
.
.
290 ' Build replacement subroutine to activate Function 20
300 DIM MSUB2%(5)
310 MSUB2%(0) = &H4B8      ' Subroutine is from this code...
320 MSUB2%(1) = &HB900    '   MOV AX,4   ; Function 4, Set Mouse Cursor
330 MSUB2%(2) = &H140     '   MOV CX,320 ; Middle of screen
340 MSUB2%(3) = &H64BA    '   MOV DX,100 ; Middle of screen
350 MSUB2%(4) = &HCD00    '   INT 33h   ; Mouse Interrupt
360 MSUB2%(5) = &HCB33    '   RETF      ; Return to BASIC
.
.
.

```

(continued)

continued

```

540 ' Swap Interrupt Subroutines
550 M1% = 20           ' Mouse Function 20
560 M2% = 0           ' Use Basic data segment
570 M3% = 4           ' Interrupt when left button released
579 ' Use lines 580-590 for mouse driver versions 6.25 and later
580 M4% = VARPTR(MSUB2%(0))
590 CALL MOUSE(M1%, M2%, M3%, M4%)
599 ' Use lines 600-620 for mouse driver versions before 6.25
600 'MTEMP% = MSUB2%(0)
610 'CALL MOUSE(M1%, M2%, M3%, MSUB2%(0))
620 'MSUB2%(0) = MTEMP%

```

QuickBasic

```

' Swap Interrupt Subroutines
.
.
.
DIM msub2%(5)
COMMON msub2%( )
.
.
.
' Build interrupt driven subroutine to activate Function 20
msub2%(0) = &H4B8      ' Subroutine is from this code...
msub2%(1) = &HB900     ' MOV AX,4 ; Function 4, Set Mouse Cursor
msub2%(2) = &H140      ' MOV CX,320 ; Middle of screen
msub2%(3) = &H64BA     ' MOV DX,100 ; Middle of screen
msub2%(4) = &HC00      ' INT 33h ; Mouse Interrupt
msub2%(5) = &HCB33     ' RETF ; Return to QuickBasic
.
.
.
' Swap Interrupt Subroutines
iRegx.ax = 20          ' Mouse Function 20
iRegx.es = VARSEG(msub2%(0)) ' Segment of msub2
iRegx.cx = 4           ' Interrupt when left button released
iRegx.dx = VARPTR(msub2%(0)) ' Offset of msub2
InterruptX &H33, iRegx, oRegx

```

C/QuickC

```

/* Swap Interrupt Subroutines */
.
.
.
/* This is the replacement subroutine for Function 20 */
void msub2()
{
    iReg.x.ax = 4;           /* Function 4: Set Mouse Cursor */
    iReg.x.cx = 320;        /* Middle of screen */
    iReg.x.dx = 100;        /* Middle of screen */
    int86(0x33, &iReg, &oReg); /* Moves cursor to upper left corner */
}
.
.
.
/* Swap Interrupt Subroutine */
iReg.x.ax = 20;           /* Mouse Function 20 */
iReg.x.cx = 4;            /* When left button is released */
iReg.x.dx = FP_OFF(msub2); /* Offset of msub2() into DX */
segregs.es = FP_SEG(msub2); /* Segment of msub2() into ES */
int86x(0x33, &iReg, &oReg, &segregs);

```

MASM

```

; Swap Interrupt Subroutines
.
.
.
; This is the replacement subroutine for Function 20
msub2 PROC
    mov ax,4           ; Function 4, Set Mouse Cursor
    mov cx,320         ; Middle of screen
    mov dx,100         ; Middle of screen
    int 33h           ; Move the cursor
    ret
msub2 ENDP

```

(continued)

continued

```

.
.
.
; Swap Interrupt Subroutines
mov ax,20          ; Mouse Function 20
mov bx,SEG msub2   ; Segment of sub into ES
mov es,bx
assume es:nothing
mov cx,4           ; Interrupt when left button released
mov dx,OFFSET msub2 ; Offset of sub into DX
int 33h

```

MOUSE FUNCTION 21: GET MOUSE DRIVER STATE STORAGE REQUIREMENTS

Call with M1% = 21

Returns M2% = buffer size required to save the mouse-driver state

Description Mouse Function 21 returns the size of the buffer required to store the current state of the mouse driver. You can use this function with Functions 22 and 23 when you want to temporarily interrupt a program that uses the mouse in order to execute another program that also uses the mouse, such as the control panel.

Examples Each of the following program fragments returns the buffer size required to store the mouse-driver state.

Interpreted Basic

```

110 ' Get Mouse Driver State Storage Requirements
120 M1% = 21
130 CALL MOUSE(M1%, M2%, M3%, M4%)
140 BUFSIZE% = M2%

```

QuickBasic

```

' Get Mouse Driver State Storage Requirements
iReg.ax = 21
InterruptX &H33, iReg, oReg
bufSize% = oReg.bx

```

C/QuickC

```

/* Get Mouse Driver State Storage Requirements */
iReg.x.ax = 21;
int86(0x33, &iReg, &oReg);
bufsize = oReg.x.bx

```

MASM

```

; Get Mouse Driver State Storage Requirements
mov ax,21
int 33h
mov bufsize,bx

```

MOUSE FUNCTION 22: SAVE MOUSE DRIVER STATE

Call with M1% = 22
 M4% = pointer to the buffer

Returns Nothing

Description Mouse Function 22 saves the current mouse-driver state in a buffer allocated by your program. You can use this function with Functions 21 and 23 when you want to temporarily interrupt a program that uses the mouse in order to execute another program that also uses the mouse.

Before your program calls Function 22, it should call Function 21 to determine the buffer size required for saving the mouse-driver state. It should then allocate the appropriate amount of memory.

Examples Each of the following program fragments saves the mouse-driver state in a buffer.

Interpreted Basic

```

100 DIM BUF%(1000)
.
.
.
220 '
230 ' Save Mouse Driver State
240 '

```

(continued)

continued

```

250 IF BUFSIZE% > 1000 THEN PRINT "Buffer not big enough" : END
260 M1% = 22
262 M4% = VARPTR(BUF%(0))
270 CALL MOUSE(M1%, M2%, M3%, M4%)

```

QuickBasic

```

' Save Mouse Driver State
buf$ = SPACE$(bufsiz%)
iReg.ax = 22
iReg.dx = SADD(buf$)
InterruptX &H33, iReg, oReg

```

C/QuickC

```

/* Save Mouse Driver State */
if ((buf = malloc(bufsize)) != NULL)
{
    iReg.x.ax = 22;
    iReg.x.dx = FP_OFF(buf);          /* Buf offset into DX */
    segregs.es = FP_SEG(buf);        /* Buf segment into ES */
    int86x(0x33, &iReg, &oReg, &segregs);
}

```

MASM

```

; Save Mouse Driver State
mov ax,22
mov dx,ds
mov es,dx
assume es:data
mov dx,OFFSET buf
int 33h

```

MOUSE FUNCTION 23: RESTORE MOUSE DRIVER STATE

Call with M1% = 23
M4% = pointer to the buffer

Returns Nothing

Description Mouse Function 23 restores the last mouse-driver state saved by Function 22. You use this function with Functions 21 and 22 when you want to temporarily interrupt a program that uses the mouse in order to execute another program that also uses the mouse. To restore the mouse-driver state saved by Function 22, call Function 23 at the end of the interrupt program.

Examples Each of the following program fragments restores the state of the mouse driver. The buffer variable contains the state previously saved by Function 22.

Interpreted Basic

```
310 ' Restore Mouse Driver State
320 '
330 M1% = 23
334 M4% = VARPTR(BUF%(0))
340 CALL MOUSE(M1%, M2%, M3%, M4%)
```

QuickBasic

```
' Restore Mouse Driver State
iReg.ax = 23
iReg.dx = SADD(buf$)
InterruptX &H33, iReg, oReg
```

C/QuickC

```
/* Restore Mouse Driver State */
iReg.x.ax = 23;
iReg.x.dx = FP_OFF(buf); /* Buf offset into DX */
segregs.es = FP_SEG(buf); /* Buf segment into ES */
int86x(0x33, &iReg, &oReg, &segregs);
```

MASM

```

; Restore Mouse Driver State
mov ax,23
mov dx,ds
mov es,dx
assume es:data
mov dx,OFFSET buf
int 33h

```

MOUSE FUNCTION 24: SET ALTERNATE SUBROUTINE CALL MASK AND ADDRESS

Call with

M1% = 24
M3% = user-interrupt call mask
M4% = user subroutine address

Returns M1% = error status (-1 if error occurred)

Description Mouse Function 24 sets the call mask and address for up to three alternate user subroutines. Function 24 differs from Function 12 in two ways: Subroutine calls using Function 24 let the called subroutine make its own interrupt calls, and Function 24 uses more call-mask bits to provide a wider range of detectable conditions. The new bits allow detection of Alt, Ctrl, and Shift key presses when you move the mouse or press a button.

A mouse hardware interrupt stops your program and calls the specified subroutine whenever one or more of the conditions defined by the call mask occurs. When the subroutine ends, your program continues execution at the point of interruption.

NOTE: When bits 5 through 7 are set, they require the corresponding shift state to be true in order for other mouse events to call the user subroutine. Unless you set bit 5, 6, or 7, or any combination of those bits, the subroutine won't be called.

The call mask is a single-integer value that defines which conditions cause an interrupt to the subroutine. Each of the first 8 bits in the call mask corresponds to a specific mouse or keyboard condition, as shown in the following table.

Mask Bit	Condition
0	Cursor position changed
1	Left-hand button pressed
2	Left-hand button released
3	Right-hand button pressed
4	Right-hand button released
5	Shift key pressed during button press or release
6	Ctrl key pressed during button press or release
7	Alt key pressed during button press or release
8–15	Not used

To call the subroutine for any of the listed conditions, set the corresponding bit(s) in the call mask to 1, and pass the mask as the *M3%* parameter. One or more of the Shift-key bits (bits 5, 6, and 7) must be set in combination with one or more of the mouse-activity bits (bits 0 through 4) to allow activation of the user subroutine.

To disable the subroutine for any of the listed conditions, set the corresponding bit(s) in the call mask to 0, and pass the mask as the *M3%* parameter. Failure to reset the mask results in the subroutine's execution whenever the last specified mouse or keyboard condition occurs.

NOTE: None of the mouse-driver versions clears the call mask when Function 0 or Function 33 is called. (The only way to reset a mask created by using Function 24 is to use another Function 24 call with the mouse-activity-bits portion of the mask set to all zeros.) To work around this problem, use Function 20 instead of Function 24 to swap your interrupt subroutine into place. Before your program exits, swap the original call address back into place.

When the mouse software makes a call to the subroutine, it loads the following information into the microprocessor's registers:

Register	Information
AX	Condition mask. (Similar to the call mask except that a bit is set only if the specified condition has occurred. Also, only mouse action bits 0 through 4 are affected, and Shift-key bits 5 through 15 are always set to 0.)
BX	Button state
CX	Horizontal cursor coordinate

(continued)

continued

Register	Information
DX	Vertical cursor coordinate
SI	Horizontal mouse counts (mickeys)
DI	Vertical mouse counts (mickeys)

NOTE: The DS register, which contains the mouse-driver data segment, does not appear in this list. The interrupt subroutine is responsible for setting the DS register as needed. Because the mouse driver works directly with the hardware, we recommend that you use assembly language to create your Function 24 routine so that registers can be manipulated easily.

Using Function 24 from Within Programs

To use Function 24 with interpreted Basic programs,

1. Load an assembly language subroutine into the Basic interpreter's data segment. All exits from the subroutine must use a FAR return instruction.
2. Pass the subroutine's entry address to Function 24 as the fourth parameter (*M4%*).

To use Function 24 with QuickBasic programs,

1. Load an assembly language subroutine into QuickBasic's data segment. You can load the subroutine into a string or into a COMMON array.
2. Pass the subroutine's address to Function 24 as the fourth parameter (*M4%*). The VARPTR function returns the address of an array.

To use Function 24 with C or QuickC programs,

1. Use the appropriate mouse call for the memory model of your program. Use *cmouses* for small-model programs, *cmousec* for compact-model programs, *cmousem* for medium-model programs, and *cmousel* for large-model and huge-model programs.
2. Pass the offset part of the subroutine's address in the fourth parameter (*M4%*). If you want to call the mouse interrupt directly, place the segment part of the address in the ES register.

To use Function 24 with MASM programs, pass the segment of the subroutine into the ES register, the offset into the DX register, the call mask into the CX register, and the mouse function number (24) into the AX register.

Examples Each program calls Function 24 to activate an interrupt-driven subroutine for the mouse. When you press Shift and the left mouse button simultaneously, the cursor moves to the upper left corner of the screen.

Interpreted Basic

```

100 ' Set Alternate Subroutine Call Mask and Address
.
.
.
210 ' Build interrupt-driven subroutine to activate Function 24
220 DIM MSUB%(5)
230 MSUB%(0) = &H4B8      ' Subroutine is from this code...
240 MSUB%(1) = &HB900    '   MOV AX,4 ; Function 4, Set Mouse Cursor
250 MSUB%(2) = &H0       '   MOV CX,0 ; Left edge of screen
260 MSUB%(3) = &HBA      '   MOV DX,0 ; Top edge of screen
270 MSUB%(4) = &HCD00    '   INT 33h ; Mouse Interrupt
280 MSUB%(5) = &HCB33    '   RETF ; Return to Basic
.
.
.
380 ' Set Alternate Subroutine Call Mask and Address
390 M1% = 24             ' Mouse Function 24
400 M3% = 34             ' When Shift key and left button are pressed
402 M4% = VARPTR(MSUB%(0))
410 CALL MOUSE(M1%, M2%, M3%, M4%)

```

QuickBasic

```

' Set Alternate Subroutine Call Mask and Address
.
.
.
DIM msub%(5)
COMMON msub%()

```

(continued)

continued

```

.
.
.
' Build interrupt-driven subroutine to activate Function 24
msub%(0) = &H4B8      ' Subroutine is from this code...
msub%(1) = &HB900     ' MOV AX,4 ; Function 4, Set Mouse Cursor
msub%(2) = &H0        ' MOV CX,0 ; Left edge of screen
msub%(3) = &HBA       ' MOV DX,0 ; Top edge of screen
msub%(4) = &HCD00     ' INT 33h ; Mouse Interrupt
msub%(5) = &HCB33     ' RETF ; Return to QuickBasic
.
.
.
' Set Alternate Subroutine Call Mask and Address
iReg.ax = 24
iReg.cx = 34          ' When Shift key and left button are pressed
iReg.dx = VARPTR(msub%(0))
InterruptX &H33, iReg, oReg

```

C/QuickC

```

/* Set Alternate Subroutine Call Mask and Address */
.
.
.
/* This is the subroutine activated by Function 24 */
void msub()
{
    iReg.x.ax = 4;          /* Function 4: Set Mouse Cursor */
    iReg.x.cx = 0;         /* Left edge of screen */
    iReg.x.dx = 0;         /* Top edge of screen */
    int86(0x33, &iReg, &oReg); /* Moves cursor to upper left corner */
}
.
.
.
/* Set Alternate Subroutine Call Mask and Address */
iReg.x.ax = 24;           /* Mouse Function 24 is called */
iReg.x.cx = 34;          /* when Shift key and left button are pressed */

```

(continued)

```

iReg.x.dx = FP_OFF(msub);          /* Offset of msub() into DX */
segregs.es = FP_SEG(msub);        /* Segment of msub() into ES */
int86x(0x33, &iReg, &oReg, &segregs);

```

MASM

```

; Set Alternate Subroutine Call Mask and Address
.
.
.
; This is the subroutine activated by Function 24
msub PROC
    mov ax,4                ; Function 4, Set Mouse Cursor
    xor cx,cx              ; Left edge of screen
    mov dx,cx              ; Top edge of screen
    int 33h                ; Move the cursor
    ret
msub ENDP
.
.
.
; Set Alternate Subroutine Call Mask and Address
mov ax,SEG msub
mov es,ax                ; Segment of sub into ES
mov ax,24                ; Mouse Function 24 when
mov cx,34                ; Shift key and left button are pressed
mov dx,OFFSET msub      ; Offset of sub into DX
int 33h

```

MOUSE FUNCTION 25: GET USER ALTERNATE INTERRUPT ADDRESS

Call with

M1%	=	25
M3%	=	user-interrupt call mask

Returns

M1%	=	error status (-1 if no vector/mask, in which case M2%, M3%, and M4% return 0)
M2%	=	user subroutine segment
M3%	=	user-interrupt call mask
M4%	=	user subroutine address

Description Mouse Function 25 returns the interrupt address of the alternate mouse user subroutine identified by the specified call mask. You can call this function to retrieve the last alternate interrupt subroutine address prior to calling Function 24 so that you can restore the subroutine address later.

The call mask is a single-integer value that defines which conditions cause an interrupt to the subroutine. Each of the first 8 bits in the call mask corresponds to a specific mouse or keyboard condition, as shown in the following list:

Mask Bit	Condition
0	Cursor position changed
1	Left-hand button pressed
2	Left-hand button released
3	Right-hand button pressed
4	Right-hand button released
5	Shift key pressed during button press or release
6	Ctrl key pressed during button press or release
7	Alt key pressed during button press or release
8–15	Not used

For assembly language programs, the subroutine address is returned as BX:DX.

Examples Assume that Function 24 was used to set the alternate interrupt subroutine. Each of the following program fragments returns the interrupt address of an alternate mouse-user subroutine.

Interpreted Basic

```

440 ' Get User Alternate Interrupt Address
450 M1% = 25           ' Mouse Function 25
460 M3% = 34           ' Same call mask
470 CALL MOUSE(M1%, M2%, M3%, M4%)
480 CALLMASK% = M3%
490 SUBSEG% = M2%
500 SUBOFFST% = M4%
```

QuickBasic

```
' Get User Alternate Interrupt Address
iReg.ax = 25
iReg.cx = 34          ' Same call mask
InterruptX &H33, iReg, oReg
callmask% = oReg.cx
subseg% = oReg.bx
suboff% = oReg.dx
```

C/QuickC

```
/* Get User Alternate Interrupt Address */
iReg.x.ax = 25;          /* Mouse Function 25 */
iReg.x.cx = 34;          /* Same call mask */
int86(0x33, &iReg, &oReg);
callmask = oReg.x.cx;
subseg = oReg.x.bx;
suboff = oReg.x.dx;
```

MASM

```
; Get User Alternate Interrupt Address
mov ax,25                ; Mouse Function 25
mov cx,34                ; Same call mask
int 33h
mov callmask,cx
mov subseg,bx
mov suboff,dx
```

MOUSE FUNCTION 26: SET MOUSE SENSITIVITY

Call with

M1%	=	26
M2%	=	horizontal mickey sensitivity number
M3%	=	vertical mickey sensitivity number
M4%	=	threshold for double speed

Returns Nothing

Description Mouse Function 26 sets mouse-to-cursor movement sensitivity by defining a scaling factor for the mouse mickeys and the double-speed threshold. For more information about the mickey, see Chapter 6, "Mouse Programming Interface."

The sensitivity numbers range from 1 through 100, where 50 specifies the default mickey factor of 1. These mickey multiplication factors range from about $\frac{1}{32}$ for a parameter of 5, to $\frac{1}{4}$ for a parameter of 100. The mickeys are multiplied by these factors before the mickey-to-pixel ratios (set by Function 15) are applied.

The double-speed ratio is also set to its default value by setting *M4%* to 50.

This function provides a simplified approach to setting the mouse sensitivity and double-speed ratios. The 0-through-100 range provides an intuitive scale for speeding or slowing the mouse motion.

Examples Each of the following program fragments sets the mouse sensitivity to 10 and the double-speed threshold to 32.

Interpreted Basic

```

110 ' Set Mouse Sensitivity
120 M1% = 26
130 M2% = 10
140 M3% = 10
150 M4% = 32
160 CALL MOUSE(M1%, M2%, M3%, M4%)

```

QuickBasic

```

' Set Mouse Sensitivity
iReg.ax = 26
iReg.bx = 10
iReg.cx = 10
iReg.dx = 32
InterruptX &H33, iReg, oReg

```

C/QuickC

```

/* Set Mouse Sensitivity */
iReg.x.ax = 26;
iReg.x.bx = 10;
iReg.x.cx = 10;
iReg.x.dx = 32;
int86(0x33, &iReg, &oReg);

```

MASM

```

; Set Mouse Sensitivity
mov ax,26
mov bx,10
mov cx,bx
mov dx,32
int 33h

```

MOUSE FUNCTION 27: GET MOUSE SENSITIVITY

Call with M1% = 27

Returns M2% = horizontal mickey sensitivity number
M3% = vertical mickey sensitivity number
M4% = threshold for double speed

Description Mouse Function 27 returns mouse-to-cursor movement sensitivity scaling factors previously set by Function 26.

These factors range from 1 through 100, with default values of 50. To slow the cursor speed, use Function 26 to decrease the setting. To increase the speed (i.e., increase the mouse sensitivity), use Function 26 to increase the setting within the range 1 through 100.

Examples Each of the following program fragments returns the current horizontal and vertical mouse sensitivity settings and the double-speed threshold sensitivity setting.

Interpreted Basic

```

300 ' Get Mouse Sensitivity
310 '
320 M1% = 27
330 CALL MOUSE(M1%, M2%, M3%, M4%)
340 HFACTOR = M2%
350 VFACTOR = M3%
360 DFACTOR = M4%

```


QuickBasic

```
' Get Mouse Sensitivity
iReg.ax = 27
InterruptX &H33, iReg, oReg
hfactor% = oReg.bx
vfactor% = oReg.cx
dfactor% = oReg.dx
```

C/QuickC

```
/* Get Mouse Sensitivity */
iReg.x.ax = 27;
int86(0x33, &iReg, &oReg);
hfactor = oReg.x.bx;
vfactor = oReg.x.cx;
dfactor = oReg.x.dx;
```

MASM

```
; Get Mouse Sensitivity
mov ax,27
int 33h
mov hfactor,bx
mov vfactor,cx
mov dfactor,dx
```

MOUSE FUNCTION 28: SET MOUSE INTERRUPT RATE

Call with M1% = 28
M2% = interrupt rate (in interrupts per second)

Returns Nothing

Description Mouse Function 28 operates only with the InPort mouse. This function sets the rate at which the mouse driver polls the status of the mouse. Faster interrupt rates provide better resolution in graphics applications, but slower interrupt rates might let the applications run faster.

The interrupt rate is a single-integer value that defines the rate (in interrupts per second). Integer values from 0 through 4 correspond to specific maximum interrupt rates, as shown in the following table.

Rate Number	Maximum Interrupt Rate
0	No interrupts allowed
1	30 interrupts per second
2	50 interrupts per second
3	100 interrupts per second
4	200 interrupts per second
>4	Not defined

NOTE: If a value greater than 4 is used, the InPort mouse driver might behave unpredictably.

Examples Each of the following program fragments sets the mouse driver interrupt rate to 100 interrupts per second.

Interpreted Basic

```
110 ' Set Mouse Interrupt Rate
120 M1% = 28
130 M2% = 3
140 CALL MOUSE(M1%, M2%, M3%, M4%)
```

QuickBasic

```
' Set Mouse Interrupt Rate
iReg.ax = 28
iReg.bx = 3
InterruptX &H33, iReg, oReg
```

C/QuickC

```
/* Set Mouse Interrupt Rate */
iReg.x.ax = 28;
iReg.x.bx = 3;
int86(0x33, &iReg, &oReg);
```

MASM

```
; Set Mouse Interrupt Rate
mov ax,28
mov bx,3
int 33h
```

MOUSE FUNCTION 29: SET CRT PAGE NUMBER

Call with M1% = 29
M2% = CRT page for mouse cursor display

Returns Nothing

Description Mouse Function 29 specifies the number of the CRT page on which the cursor will be displayed. For information about the number of CRT pages available in each display mode your adapter supports, see the documentation that came with your graphics adapter.

Examples Each program fragment sets the CRT page number to 3.

Interpreted Basic

```
110 ' Set CRT Page Number
120 M1% = 29
130 M2% = 3           ' Page 3
140 CALL MOUSE(M1%, M2%, M3%, M4%)
```

QuickBasic

```
' Set CRT Page Number
iReg.ax = 29
iReg.bx = 3           ' Page 3
InterruptX &H33, iReg, oReg
```

C/QuickC

```
/* Set CRT Page Number */
iReg.x.ax = 29;
iReg.x.bx = 3;           /* Page 3 */
int86(0x33, &iReg, &oReg);
```

MASM

```
; Set CRT Page Number
mov ax,29
mov bx,3               ; Page 3
int 33h
```

MOUSE FUNCTION 30: GET CRT PAGE NUMBER

Call with M1% = 30

Returns M2% = CRT page of current cursor display

Description Mouse Function 30 returns the number of the CRT page on which the cursor is currently displayed.

Examples Each of the following program fragments returns the number of the CRT page on which the cursor is currently displayed.

Interpreted Basic

```
300 ' Get CRT Page Number
310 '
320 M1% = 30
330 CALL MOUSE(M1%, M2%, M3%, M4%)
340 CRTPAGE% = M2%
```

QuickBasic

```
' Get CRT Page Number
iReg.ax = 30
InterruptX &H33, iReg, oReg
CRTPage% = oReg.bx
```

C/QuickC

```
/* Get CRT Page Number */
iReg.x.ax = 30;
int86(0x33, &iReg, &oReg);
crtpage = oReg.x.bx;
```

MASM

```
; Get CRT Page Number
mov ax,30
int 33h
mov crtpage,bx
```

MOUSE FUNCTION 31: DISABLE MOUSE DRIVER

Call with *M1%* = 31

Returns *M1%* = error status (-1 if error occurred)
 M2% = offset of old Interrupt 33H vector
 M3% = segment of old Interrupt 33H vector

Description Use Mouse Function 31 in the MOUSE OFF portion of your program to disable the mouse driver, which subsequently disables the mouse. When your program calls Function 31, you can restore the Interrupt 33H vector to the value it held before the mouse driver was enabled by using the *M2%* and *M3%* parameters. Function 31 removes all other vectors used by the mouse driver.

If this function can't remove all mouse-driver vectors, excluding the Interrupt 33H vector, it returns an error of -1 for the *M1%* parameter.

Examples Each of the following program fragments disables the mouse driver and returns the segment and offset of the old Interrupt 33H.

When your program calls Function 31 from an assembly language program, use ES:BX for the address of the old Interrupt 33H vector.

Interpreted Basic

```

290 ' Disable Mouse Driver
300 M1% = 31                                 ' Mouse Function 31
310 CALL MOUSE(M1%, M2%, M3%, M4%)
320 ERRORSTAT% = M1%
330 I33OFF% = M2%
340 I33SEG% = M3%
```

QuickBasic

```

' Disable Mouse Driver
iReg,ax = 31
InterruptX &H33, iReg, oReg
errorstat% = oReg,ax
i33off% = oReg,bx
i33seg% = oReg,es
```

C/QuickC

```

/* Disable Mouse Driver */
iReg.x.ax = 31;                /* Mouse Function 31 */
int86X(0x33, &iReg, &oReg, &segregs);
errorstat = oReg.x.ax;
i33off = oReg.x.bx;
i33seg = segreg.es;

```

MASM

```

; Disable Mouse Driver
mov ax,31
int 33h
mov errstat,ax
mov i33off,bx
mov i33seg,es

```

MOUSE FUNCTION 32: ENABLE MOUSE DRIVER

Call with M1% = 32

Returns The same error status flags as does Function 0 for mouse-driver versions 7.0 and later; previous versions return nothing.

Description Use mouse Function 32 in the MOUSE ON portion of your program to enable the mouse driver, which subsequently enables the mouse. Function 32 sets the Interrupt 33H vector to the mouse-interrupt vector and installs all other mouse-driver vectors.

Examples Each of the following program fragments enables the mouse driver.

Interpreted Basic

```

110 ' Enable Mouse Driver
120 M1% = 32
130 CALL MOUSE(M1%, M2%, M3%, M4%)

```

QuickBasic

```

' Enable Mouse Driver
iReg.ax = 32
InterruptX &H33, iReg, oReg

```

C/QuickC

```
/* Enable Mouse Driver */
iReg.x.ax = 32;
int86(0x33, &iReg, &oReg);
```

MASM

```
; Enable Mouse Driver
mov ax,32
int 33h
```

MOUSE FUNCTION 33: SOFTWARE RESET

Call with $M1\%$ = 33

Returns $M1\%$ = -1 (if mouse driver installed; otherwise, 33)
 $M2\%$ = 2 (provided $M1\%$ = -1)

Description Mouse Function 33 is similar to Function 0 (Mouse Reset and Status) except that Function 33 neither initializes the mouse hardware nor resets other variables that are dependent on display hardware. Resets are confined to software only. Compare with Function 47, which resets only hardware values.

Function 33 indicates a valid software reset by returning both values. The $M1\%$ parameter must equal -1, and the $M2\%$ parameter must equal 2 for a valid reset.

Function 33 resets the mouse driver to the following default values:

Parameter	Value
Cursor position	Center of screen
Internal cursor flag	-1 (cursor hidden)
Graphics cursor	Arrow
Text cursor	Reverse video block
Interrupt call mask	All 0 (no interrupt subroutine specified)*
Horizontal mickey-per-pixel ratio	8 to 8

*This is true only for interrupt subroutines that weren't installed by using Function 24.

(continued)

Parameter	Value
Vertical mickey-per-pixel ratio	16 to 8
Double-speed threshold	64 mickeys per second
Minimum horizontal cursor position	0
Maximum horizontal cursor position	Current display-mode virtual screen <i>x</i> -value minus 1
Minimum vertical cursor position	0
Maximum vertical cursor position	Current display-mode virtual screen <i>y</i> -value minus 1

Examples Each of the following program fragments resets the mouse driver.

Interpreted Basic

```

300 ' Software Reset
310 '
320 M1% = 33
330 CALL MOUSE(M1%, M2%, M3%, M4%)
340 STAT1% = M1%
350 STAT2% = M2%
```

QuickBasic

```

' Software Reset
iReg.ax = 33
InterruptX &H33, iReg, oReg
stat1% = oReg.ax
stat2% = oReg.bx
```

C/QuickC

```

/* Software Reset */
iReg.x.ax = 33;
int86(0x33, &iReg, &oReg);
stat1 = oReg.x.ax;
stat2 = oReg.x.bx;
```


MASM

```

; Software Reset
mov ax,33
int 33h
mov stat1,ax
mov stat2,bx

```

MOUSE FUNCTION 34: SET LANGUAGE FOR MESSAGES

Call with M1% = 34
M2% = language number

Returns Nothing

Description Mouse Function 34 operates only with the international version of the mouse driver—it produces no effect with the domestic version of the driver. Function 34 lets you specify the language in which messages and prompts from the mouse driver are displayed. You can specify the language with a single integer from the Number column in this table.

Number	Language
0	English
1	French
2	Dutch
3	German
4	Swedish
5	Finnish
6	Spanish
7	Portuguese
8	Italian

Examples Each of the following program fragments sets the language to Dutch.

Interpreted Basic

```

110 ' Set Language for Messages
120 M1% = 34
130 M2% = 2
140 CALL MOUSE(M1%, M2%, M3%, M4%)

```

QuickBasic

```
' Set Language for Messages
iReg.ax = 34
iReg.bx = 2
InterruptX &H33, iReg, oReg
```

C/QuickC

```
/* Set Language for Messages */
iReg.x.ax = 34;
iReg.x.bx = 2;
int86(0x33, &iReg, &oReg);
```

MASM

```
; Set Language for Messages
mov ax,34
mov bx,2
int 33h
```

MOUSE FUNCTION 35: GET LANGUAGE NUMBER

Call with M1% = 35

Returns M2% = the current language

Description Mouse Function 35 operates only with the international version of the mouse driver. This function returns the number of the language currently set in the mouse driver.

NOTE: The number returned in M2% represents a language. (See the language table in the discussion of Function 34.) If you don't have an international mouse driver, the value 0 (English) will always be returned.

Examples Each of the following program fragments returns the current language number from the mouse driver.

Interpreted Basic

```

110 ' Get Language Number
120 M1% = 35
130 CALL MOUSE(M1%, M2%, M3%, M4%)
140 LANGUAGE% = M2%

```

QuickBasic

```

' Get Language Number
iReg.ax = 35
InterruptX &H33, iReg, oReg
language% = oReg.bx

```

C/QuickC

```

/* Get Language Number */
iReg.x.ax = 35;
int86(0x33, &iReg, &oReg);
language = oReg.x.bx;

```

MASM

```

; Get Language Number
mov ax,35
int 33h
mov language,bx

```

MOUSE FUNCTION 36: GET DRIVER VERSION, MOUSE TYPE, AND IRQ NUMBER

Call with M1% = 36

Returns M2% = mouse-driver version number
 M3% = mouse type and IRQ number

Description Mouse Function 36 returns the version number of the mouse driver, the type of mouse the driver requires, and the number of the interrupt request type (IRQ). In the returned value *M2%*, the high-order 8 bits contain the major version number and the low-order 8 bits contain the minor version number. For example, if you were using mouse-driver

version 6.10, Function 36 would return an *M2%* value of 1552 (decimal), which is equal to 0610 (hexadecimal).

The high-order 8 bits of the returned value *M3%* contain the mouse type as follows:

- The value 1 indicates a bus mouse.
- The value 2 indicates a serial mouse.
- The value 3 indicates an InPort mouse.
- The value 4 indicates a PS/2 mouse.
- The value 5 indicates a Hewlett-Packard mouse.

The low-order 8 bits of the returned value *M3%* contain the value for the interrupt-request type as follows:

- The value 0 indicates PS/2.
- A value ranging from 2 through 5 or the value 7 indicates a mouse interrupt.

Examples Each of the following program fragments returns the mouse-driver version number, the mouse type, and the IRQ number.

Interpreted Basic

```

110 ' Get Driver Version, Mouse Type, and IRQ Number
120 '
130 M1% = 36
140 CALL MOUSE(M1%, M2%, M3%, M4%)
150 VERSION$ = RIGHT$("000" + HEX$(M2%),4)
160 MAJORVERSION% = VAL(LEFT$(VERSION$,2)) 'Decimal notation
170 MINORVERSION% = VAL(RIGHT$(VERSION$,2)) 'Decimal notation
180 MOUSETYPE% = M3% \ 256
190 MOUSEIRQ% = M3% AND &HFF

```

QuickBasic

```

' Get Driver Version, Mouse Type, and IRQ Number
iReg.ax = 36
InterruptX &H33, iReg, oReg
version$ = RIGHT$("000" + HEX$(oReg.bx), 4)
majorVersion% = VAL(LEFT$(version$, 2)) 'Decimal notation
minorVersion% = VAL(RIGHT$(version$, 2)) 'Decimal notation
mouseType% = oReg.cx \ 256
mouseIRQ% = oReg.cx AND &HFF

```

C/QuickC

```

/* Get Driver Version, Mouse Type, and IRQ Number */
iReg.x.ax = 36;
int86(0x33, &iReg, &oReg);
majorversion = oReg.h.bh;      /* Hexadecimal-digits notation */
minorversion = oReg.h.bl;     /* Hexadecimal-digits notation */
mousetype = oReg.h.ch;
IRQnum = oReg.h.cl;

```

MASM

```

; Get Driver Version, Mouse Type, and IRQ Number
mov ax,36
int 33h
mov majorversion,bh          ; Hexadecimal-digits notation
mov minorversion,bl        ; Hexadecimal-digits notation
mov mousetype,ch
mov IRQnum,cl

```

MOUSE FUNCTION 37: GET GENERAL DRIVER INFORMATION

Call with M1% = 37

Returns M1% = general information
M2% = fCursorLock
M3% = fInMouseCode
M4% = fMouseBusy

Description Mouse Function 37 returns general information about the mouse driver. Single-integer values *M2%*, *M3%*, and *M4%* are used for OS/2 programming.

Bit fields in the single-integer value *M1%* provide the following information:

- Bit 15 represents the driver type; the value 0 indicates the mouse driver was loaded as a COM file; the value 1 indicates the driver was loaded as a SYS file by a command in CONFIG.SYS.
- Bit 14 is 0 if the mouse driver is the original nonintegrated type or 1 if it's the newer integrated type. This new driver is sometimes referred to as MDD, or Mouse Display Driver.

- Bits 12 and 13 indicate the current cursor type. Both bits are 0 when the software text cursor is in effect, whether the cursor is visible or not. Bit 13 is 0 and bit 12 is 1 when the hardware text cursor is in effect. Bit 13 is 1, and bit 12 can be either 0 or 1, to indicate the graphics cursor.
- Bits 8 through 11 indicate the interrupt rate at which the mouse driver polls the status of the mouse. The binary value of these four bits is the same as the rate number for Function 28 (Set Mouse Interrupt Rate). A default value of 30 interrupts per second is normally indicated. You can change the interrupt rate from its default only if you are using the InPort mouse. Refer to Function 28 for more information.

The least significant byte of *M1%*, bits 0 through 7, is used only by the integrated mouse driver. This 1-byte value is the count of currently active MDDs.

The parameter *M2%*, *fCursorLock*, is an OS/2 semaphore flag used to prevent reentrancy problems. With OS/2 it's possible to have stacked mouse interrupts, in which the mouse driver interrupts the mouse driver. The parameter *fCursorLock* is used by the driver to coordinate its actions.

The parameter *M3%*, *fInMouseCode*, is a flag that indicates to OS/2 programs that the current execution path is in the mouse-driver code.

The parameter *M4%*, *fMouseBusy*, is a flag that indicates to OS/2 programs that mouse-driver code has been entered and has not yet exited. This flag can be set even if the mouse driver is not the currently active task.

This function is available in mouse-driver version 6.26 or later.

Examples Each of the following program fragments returns general driver information.

Interpreted Basic

```
110 ' Get General Driver Information
120 M1% = 37
130 CALL MOUSE(M1%, M2%, M3%, M4%)
```

QuickBasic

```
' Get General Driver Information
iReg.ax = 37
InterruptX &H33, iReg, oReg
```

C/QuickC

```
/* Get General Driver Information */
iReg.x.ax = 37;
int86(0x33, &iReg, &oReg);
```

MASM

```
; Get General Driver Information
mov ax,37
int 33h
```

MOUSE FUNCTION 38: GET MAXIMUM VIRTUAL COORDINATES

Call with M1% = 38

Returns M2% = mouse-disabled flag
M3% = maximum virtual *x*
M4% = maximum virtual *y*

Description Mouse Function 38 returns a flag in *M2%* that indicates whether the mouse driver is disabled and indicates the maximum virtual coordinates in *M3%* and *M4%* for the current video mode.

The mouse-disabled flag is nonzero after mouse Function 31 is called to disable the driver. The flag is 0 if Function 31 has not been called or if Function 32 was called to enable the driver.

The maximum virtual *xy*-coordinates are the defaults for the currently set video mode. For example, all CGA text and graphics modes return 639 and 199 for maximum virtual *xy*-coordinates.

You can use Functions 7 and 8 to set effective maximum values for mouse coordinates. Function 38 ignores these settings and returns the absolute maximum for the current video mode. Use Function 49 to return the values set by Functions 7 and 8.

This function is available in mouse-driver version 6.26 or later.

Examples Each of the following program fragments returns the maximum virtual coordinates.

Interpreted Basic

```
110 ' Get Maximum Virtual Coordinates
120 M1% = 38
130 CALL MOUSE(M1%, M2%, M3%, M4%)
```

QuickBasic

```
' Get Maximum Virtual Coordinates
iReg.ax = 38
InterruptX &H33, iReg, oReg
```

C/QuickC

```
/* Get Maximum Virtual Coordinates */
iReg.x.ax = 38;
int86(0x33, &iReg, &oReg);
```

MASM

```
; Get Maximum Virtual Coordinates
mov ax,38
int 33h
```

MOUSE FUNCTION 39: GET SCREEN/CURSOR MASKS AND MICKEY COUNTS

Call with M1% = 39

Returns M1% = screen-mask value or scan-line start
M2% = cursor-mask value or scan-line stop
M3% = horizontal mickey counts
M4% = vertical mickey counts

Description Mouse Function 39 returns cursor information and accumulated raw mickey counts. If the software cursor is in effect, the first two parameters return single-integer screen-mask and cursor-mask values. Function 10 lets you change these mask values from their default settings.

If the hardware cursor is in effect, the first two parameters return the scan-line start and stop values. These values depend on the display adapter in the computer.

The horizontal and vertical mickey counts are raw counts accumulated since the last time the mouse was polled for movement. These counts are unaffected by the acceleration table, double-speed threshold, or sensitivity settings.

This function is available in mouse-driver version 7.01 or later. The scan-line start and scan-line stop information is returned only by mouse driver version 7.02 or later.

NOTE: For more information about the software text cursor and the hardware text cursor, see Chapter 6, "Mouse Programming Interface."

Examples Each of the following program fragments returns the mickey counts and the screen/cursor mask values or scan-line start and stop values.

Interpreted Basic

```
110 ' Get Screen/Cursor Masks and Mickey Counts
120 M1% = 39
130 CALL MOUSE(M1%, M2%, M3%, M4%)
```

QuickBasic

```
' Get Screen/Cursor Masks and Mickey Counts
iReg.ax = 39
InterruptX &H33, iReg, oReg
```

C/QuickC

```
/* Get Screen/Cursor Masks and Mickey Counts */
iReg.x.ax = 39;
int86(0x33, &iReg, &oReg);
```

MASM

```
; Get Screen/Cursor Masks and Mickey Counts
mov ax,39
int 33h
```

MOUSE FUNCTION 40: SET VIDEO MODE

Call with M1% = 40
 M3% = video-mode number
 M4% = font size

Returns M3% = success flag

Description Mouse Function 40 sets the mouse driver's video mode. Use Function 41 to determine valid modes for your computer.

This function ignores modes unsupported by the video hardware in your computer. The mouse driver changes its behavior only if the selected video mode is valid. The returned value of *M3%* is 0 when the mode selected is valid and is the attempted video-mode number if the mode selected is not valid.

Some video modes support font size control. The most significant byte of the font size parameter sets the *y* font size value, and the least significant byte sets the *x* font size value. Set the font size parameter to 0 to indicate the internally defined default font size for the indicated video mode.

Functions 40 and 41 do nothing if *M3%* equals 0.

This function is available in mouse-driver version 7.0 or later.

Examples Each of the following program fragments sets the video mode.

Interpreted Basic

```
110 ' Set Video Mode
120 M1% = 40
130 M3% = ModeNumber%
140 M4% = 0
150 CALL MOUSE(M1%, M2%, M3%, M4%)
```

QuickBasic

```
' Set Video Mode
iReg.ax = 40
iReg.cx = ModeNumber%
iReg.dx = 0
InterruptX &H33, iReg, oReg
```

C/QuickC

```

/* Set Video Mode */
iReg.x.ax = 40;
iReg.x.cx = mode_number;
iReg.x.dx = 0;
int86(0x33, &iReg, &oReg);

```

MASM

```

; Set Video Mode
mov ax,40
mov cx,mode_number
xor dx, dx
int 33h

```

MOUSE FUNCTION 41: ENUMERATE VIDEO MODES

Call with M1% = 41
 M3% = find first, or find next

Returns M2% = segment of string
 M3% = video mode number
 M4% = offset of string

Description Mouse Function 41 enumerates, or lists, all video modes supported by the currently installed mouse driver. The returned video-mode numbers are the same as those passed to Function 40 to set a mode.

Set M3% to 0 to list the first video mode. Set M3% to any nonzero value to list the next video mode in the list. The end of the list is indicated by a returned video-mode number of 0.

If a string description of the listed video mode is available, the segment and offset of the beginning of the string are returned. This far pointer is *NULL* (both the segment and offset are zero) if the string description is not provided by the currently installed mouse driver. The string is terminated by a \$ character (ASCII 36 decimal), followed by a zero byte.

This function is available in mouse-driver version 7.0 or later.

NOTE: The enumerated video-mode numbers might not be in increasing order and might be repeated in the enumeration.

Examples Each program fragment returns a video-mode number.

Interpreted Basic

```
110 ' Enumerate Video Modes
120 M1% = 41
130 M3% = FirstOrNext%
140 CALL MOUSE(M1%, M2%, M3%, M4%)
```

QuickBasic

```
' Enumerate Video Modes
iReg.ax = 41
iReg.cx = FirstOrNext%
InterruptX &H33, iReg, oReg
```

C/QuickC

```
/* Enumerate Video Modes */
iReg.x.ax = 41;
iReg.x.cx = first_or_next;
int86x(0x33, &iReg, &oReg, &segregs);
```

MASM

```
; Enumerate Video Modes
mov ax,41
mov cx,first_or_next
int 33h
```

MOUSE FUNCTION 42: GET CURSOR HOT SPOT

Call with M1% = 42

Returns M1% = fCursor
M2% = horizontal cursor hot spot
M3% = vertical cursor hot spot
M4% = type of mouse

Description Function 42 returns the cursor hot-spot location, the type of mouse in use, and the internal counter that controls cursor visibility.

The parameter *fCursor* is the internal count of calls to Function 1 (Show Cursor) and Function 2 (Hide Cursor). For more information about the operation of this internal cursor count, see Chapter 6, “Mouse Programming Interface.”

The horizontal and vertical hot-spot locations are relative to the upper left corner of the cursor block. Although these values *can* range from -128 through 127, they usually range from 0 through 15, which is within the cursor pixel area. Function 9 sets the hot-spot location.

One of six mouse types is currently returned, as shown in the following table:

Value	Meaning
0	No mouse
1	Bus mouse
2	Serial mouse
3	InPort mouse
4	IBM mouse
5	Hewlett-Packard mouse

This function is available in mouse-driver version 7.02 or later.

Examples Each of the following program fragments returns the coordinate values of the cursor hot spot and the type value of the cursor.

Interpreted Basic

```
110 ' Get Cursor Hot Spot
120 M1% = 42
130 CALL MOUSE(M1%, M2%, M3%, M4%)
```

QuickBasic

```
' Get Cursor Hot Spot
iReg.ax = 42
InterruptX &H33, iReg, oReg
```

C/QuickC

```
/* Get Cursor Hot Spot */
iReg.x.ax = 42;
int86(0x33, &iReg, &oReg);
```

MASM

```

; Get Cursor Hot Spot
mov ax,42
int 33h

```

MOUSE FUNCTION 43: LOAD ACCELERATION CURVES

Call with

- M1% = 43
- M2% = curve number
- M3% = segment of curve data buffer
- M4% = offset of curve data buffer

Returns M1% = success flag

Description Mouse Function 43 loads acceleration-curve data into the mouse driver or optionally resets the default curves.

Set curve number to -1 to restore default curves or to a value from 1 through 4 in order to select which curve to activate. Pass the far address of a byte array defining the curves in the ES:SI registers (*M3%* and *M4%*). The byte array contains 324 bytes, grouped in four sequential tables that completely define the acceleration curves. The structure of this buffer, and an explanation of each part, appears on page 204.

This function is available in mouse-driver version 7.0 or later.

Only one of the four acceleration curves is active at any time. The mouse driver accumulates raw mouse-motion counts and determines cursor movement based on values from these tables. The mouse-count table is scanned from the first count less than the raw mouse-motion count. The position in this table is used as an index for the scale-factor table. The raw mouse count is multiplied by the selected scale factor to determine the accelerated distance to move the mouse cursor.

The first table of the array indicates the number of significant entries in the next two tables. For example, a byte value of 7 in the third byte of the array (offset 2) indicates that the third curve will use only 7 mouse-count values and 7 scale factors. Values in this table should be in the range 1 to 32.

The mouse-count-threshold table values are compared with raw mouse-motion counts to determine which scale factor the mouse driver should use. The threshold values must be arranged in ascending order because the mouse driver searches for the first entry greater than the raw mouse count.

Curve-Length Table

Offset	Bytes	Description
0	1	Number of mouse counts and factors for curve 1
1	1	Number of mouse counts and factors for curve 2
2	1	Number of mouse counts and factors for curve 3
3	1	Number of mouse counts and factors for curve 4

Mouse-Count Table

Offset	Bytes	Description
4	32	Array of ascending mouse-count thresholds for curve 1
36	32	Array of ascending mouse-count thresholds for curve 2
68	32	Array of ascending mouse-count thresholds for curve 3
100	32	Array of ascending mouse-count thresholds for curve 4

Scale-Factor Table

Offset	Bytes	Description
132	32	Array of scale factors at each threshold for curve 1
164	32	Array of scale factors at each threshold for curve 2
196	32	Array of scale factors at each threshold for curve 3
228	32	Array of scale factors at each threshold for curve 4

Curve-Name Table

Offset	Bytes	Description
260	16	ASCII string name for curve 1
276	16	ASCII string name for curve 2
292	16	ASCII string name for curve 3
308	16	ASCII string name for curve 4

The scale factor is selected based on the location of the threshold value. For example, if the third threshold value is selected for a given number of raw mouse counts, then the corresponding third scale factor is used to modify the cursor movement. The calculated cursor movement is proportional to the scale factor, and the scale factor is selected based on mouse velocity.

The curve-name table contains 16-character ASCII string names for each of the four curves. The default strings are padded with spaces and are not terminated with any special byte value, for example, a \$.

Examples Each of the following program fragments loads the acceleration tables from a buffer.

Interpreted Basic

```

110 ' Load Acceleration Curves
120 M1% = 43
130 M2% = 1
140 M3% = 0
150 M4% = VARPTR( BUF%(0) )
160 CALL MOUSE(M1%, M2%, M3%, M4%)

```

QuickBasic

```

' Load Acceleration Curves
iReg.ax = 43
iReg.bx = 1
iReg.es = VARSEG(a$)
iReg.si = SADD(a$)
InterruptX &H33, iReg, oReg

```

C/QuickC

```

/* Load Acceleration Curves */
iReg.x.ax = 43;
iReg.x.bx = 1;
segregs.es = FP_SEG( buf );
iReg.x.si = FP_OFF( buf );
int86x(0x33, &iReg, &oReg, &segregs);

```

MASM

```

; Load Acceleration Curves
mov ax,SEG buf
mov es,ax
mov si,OFFSET buf
mov ax,43
mov bx,1
int 33h

```


MOUSE FUNCTION 44: READ ACCELERATION CURVES

Call with M1% = 44

Returns M1% = success flag
 M2% = curve number
 M3% = segment-of-curve data buffer
 M4% = offset-of-curve data buffer

Description Function 44 reads acceleration-curve data from the mouse driver. The success-flag value is 0 if the function was successful. The currently active acceleration-curve number is returned in the second parameter. The ES:SI registers (*M3%* and *M4%*) return a far address to a 324-byte array that defines the four acceleration curves.

For more information about the contents of this array, see Function 43 (Load Acceleration Curves).

This function is available in mouse-driver version 7.0 or later.

Examples Each of the following program fragments returns acceleration-curve information.

Interpreted Basic

```
110 ' Read Acceleration Curves
120 M1% = 44
130 CALL MOUSE(M1%, M2%, M3%, M4%)
```

QuickBasic

```
' Read Acceleration Curves
iReg.ax = 44
InterruptX &H33, iReg, oReg
```

C/QuickC

```
/* Read Acceleration Curves */
iReg.x.ax = 44;
int86x(0x33, &iReg, &oReg, &segregs);
```

MASM

```

; Read Acceleration Curves
mov ax,44
int 33h

```

MOUSE FUNCTION 45: SET/GET ACTIVE ACCELERATION CURVE

Call with

M1%	=	45
M2%	=	set/get curve number
	=	-1 to get active curve
	=	1 through 4 to set curve number 1 through 4

Returns

M1%	=	success flag
M2%	=	curve number
M3%	=	segment of curve name string
M4%	=	offset of curve name string

Description Mouse Function 45 sets one of the four acceleration curves or gets the currently active curve number. Set *M2%* to -1 to return the currently active curve number, or set *M2%* to a number in the range 1 through 4 to set the active curve number.

The success-flag value is 0 if the function was successful or -2 if the set curve number is not in the range 1 through 4. The active curve number is returned in *M2%*. The ES:SI registers (*M3%* and *M4%*) return a far address to a 16-byte string description of the active curve number. Note that this string is not terminated with any special byte value, for example, a \$.

For more information about acceleration curves, see Function 43 (Load Acceleration Curves).

This function is available in mouse-driver version 7.0 or later.

Examples Each program fragment returns the active acceleration-curve value.

Interpreted Basic

```

110 ' Set/Get Active Acceleration Curve
120 M1% = 45
130 M2% = -1
140 CALL MOUSE(M1%, M2%, M3%, M4%)

```

QuickBasic

```
' Set/Get Active Acceleration Curve
iReg.ax = 45
iReg.bx = -1
InterruptX &H33, iReg, oReg
```

C/QuickC

```
/* Set/Get Active Acceleration Curve */
iReg.x.ax = 45;
iReg.x.bx = -1;
int86x(0x33, &iReg, &oReg, &segregs);
```

MASM

```
; Set/Get Active Acceleration Curve
mov ax,45
mov bx,-1
int 33h
```

MOUSE FUNCTION 47: MOUSE HARDWARE RESET

Call with M1% = 47

Returns M1% = success flag

Description Mouse Function 47 is similar to Function 0 (Mouse Reset and Status) except that Function 47 doesn't reset software values. Mouse hardware and variables that are dependent on display hardware *are* reset. Compare this function with Function 33 (Software Reset), which resets only the software and not the hardware.

The success-flag value is -1 if the function was successful or 0 if the hardware reset failed.

This function is available in mouse-driver version 7.02 or later.

Examples Each of the following program fragments resets the mouse hardware.

Interpreted Basic

```

110 ' Mouse Hardware Reset
120 M1% = 47
130 CALL MOUSE(M1%, M2%, M3%, M4%)

```

QuickBasic

```

' Mouse Hardware Reset
iReg.ax = 47
InterruptX &H33, iReg, oReg

```

C/QuickC

```

/* Mouse Hardware Reset */
iReg.x.ax = 47;
int86(0x33, &iReg, &oReg);

```

MASM

```

; Mouse Hardware Reset
mov ax,47
int 33h

```

MOUSE FUNCTION 48: SET/GET BALLPOINT INFORMATION

Call with

M1%	=	48
M2%	=	rotation angle
M3%	=	command

Returns

M1%	=	status
M2%	=	rotation angle
M3%	=	button masks

Description Mouse Function 48 sets or returns BallPoint-orientation and button-mask information. Set the command value to 0 to return the status of the BallPoint device. Set the command value to a nonzero value to set the rotation angle and masks. The rotation angle ranges from $-32,768$ through $+32,767$ degrees relative to the internal device orientation. The high byte of command sets the primary button mask, and the low byte

sets the secondary button mask. The middle 4 bits set buttons b1, b2, b3, and b4 and have the form

```
0 0 b1 b3 b2 b4 0 0
```

The returned status is meaningful only if the mouse driver supports the BallPoint device. The status is -1 if the BallPoint device is not present. Otherwise, status returns the state of the buttons, in the form

```
0 0 0 0 0 0 0 0 0 0 b1 b3 b2 b4 0 0
```

The rotation angle is returned in the range 0 through 360 degrees. The high byte of the button-mask parameter is the primary button mask, and the low byte is the secondary button mask. These masks have the same form as described above.

This function is available in mouse-driver version 7.04 or later.

Examples Each program fragment returns BallPoint information.

Interpreted Basic

```
110 ' Set/Get BallPoint Information
120 M1% = 48
130 M3% = 0
140 CALL MOUSE(M1%, M2%, M3%, M4%)
```

QuickBasic

```
' Set/Get BallPoint Information
iReg.ax = 48
iReg.cx = 0
InterruptX &H33, iReg, oReg
```

C/QuickC

```
/* Set/Get BallPoint Information */
iReg.x.ax = 48;
iReg.x.cx = 0;
int86(0x33, &iReg, &oReg);
```

MASM

```

; Set/Get BallPoint Information
mov ax,48
mov cx,0
int 33h

```

MOUSE FUNCTION 49: GET MINIMUM/MAXIMUM VIRTUAL COORDINATES

Call with M1% = 49

Returns M1% = virtual *x* minimum
M2% = virtual *y* minimum
M3% = virtual *x* maximum
M4% = virtual *y* maximum

Description Mouse Function 49 returns the minimum and maximum horizontal and vertical coordinates for the current video mode. These *x* and *y* values are those set by Functions 7 and 8. If not set by these functions, they default to 0 for the minimum values and absolute maximum *x* and *y* for the maximum values. See Functions 7, 8, and 38 for related information.

This function is available in mouse-driver version 7.05 or later.

Examples Each of the following program fragments returns the minimum and maximum virtual coordinates.

Interpreted Basic

```

110 ' Get Minimum/Maximum Virtual Coordinates
120 M1% = 49
130 CALL MOUSE(M1%, M2%, M3%, M4%)

```

QuickBasic

```

' Get Minimum/Maximum Virtual Coordinates
iReg.ax = 49
InterruptX &H33, iReg, oReg

```

C/QuickC

```

/* Get Minimum/Maximum Virtual Coordinates */
iReg.x.ax = 49;
int86(0x33, &inregs, &outregs);

```

MASM

```

; Get Minimum/Maximum Virtual Coordinates
mov ax,49
int 33h

```

MOUSE FUNCTION 50: GET ACTIVE ADVANCED FUNCTIONS

Call with M1% = 50

Returns M1% = active function flags

Description Mouse Function 50 returns 16 flags (bits) that indicate active advanced functions.

The most significant bit in *M1%* is 1 if Function 37 is active and 0 if it's not active. The next most significant bit is the flag for Function 38, and so on.

Function 50 provides a convenient way to determine if version 8.0 of the mouse driver is installed. Earlier versions support all mouse functions from 0 through 36, but many of the functions from 37 on are available only in version 8.0.

This function is available in mouse-driver version 7.05 or later.

Examples Each of the following program fragments returns information that indicates which advanced functions are active.

Interpreted Basic

```

110 ' Get Active Advanced Functions
120 M1% = 50
130 CALL MOUSE(M1%, M2%, M3%, M4%)

```

QuickBasic

```
' Get Active Advanced Functions
iReg.ax = 50
InterruptX &H33, iReg, oReg
```

C/QuickC

```
/* Get Active Advanced Functions */
iReg.x.ax = 50;
int86(0x33, &iReg, &oReg);
```

MASM

```
; Get Active Advanced Functions
mov ax,50
int 33h
```

MOUSE FUNCTION 51: GET SWITCH SETTINGS

Call with

M1% = 51
M3% = length of buffer
M4% = pointer to buffer

Returns

M1% = 0
M3% = number of bytes returned in buffer
M4% = pointer to buffer

Description Mouse Function 51 returns the current settings of switch values that can be passed to the mouse driver. The settings are returned in a buffer. *M3%* contains the length of the buffer. *M4%* is a pointer to the buffer (ES:DX).

This function is available in mouse-driver version 7.05 or later.

Contents of Output Buffer

Byte	Contents	Range
0	MouseType (low nibble)	0-5
	MousePort (high nibble)	0-4
1	Language	0-10
2	Horizontal Sensitivity	0-10
3	Vertical Sensitivity	0-100
4	Double Threshold	0-100
5	Ballistic Curve	1-4
6	Interrupt Rate	1-4
7	Cursor Override Mask	0-255
8	Laptop Adjustment	0-255
9	Memory Type	0-2
10	Super VGA Support	0-1
11	Rotation Angle	0-359
13	Primary Button	1-4
14	Secondary Button	1-4
15	Click Lock Enabled	0-1
16-339	Acceleration-Curve Data (see Function 43 for description)	

Examples Each program fragment returns current mouse switch settings.

Interpreted Basic

```

110 ' Get Switch Settings
120 M1% = 51
130 M3% = 340
140 M4% = VARPTR( BUFFER(0) )
150 CALL MOUSE(M1%, M2%, M3%, M4%)

```

QuickBasic

```

' Get Switch Settings
BUF$ = SPACE$( 340 )
iReg.ax = 51
iReg.cx = 340
iReg.dx = SADD( BUF$ )
InterruptX &H33, iReg, oReg

```

C/QuickC

```

/* Get Switch Settings */
int buf[340];
iReg.x.ax = 51;
iReg.x.cx = 340;
iReg.x.dx = FP_OFF( buf );
segregs.es = FP_SEG( buf );
int86x(0x33, &iReg, &oReg, segregs);

```

MASM

```

; Get Switch Settings
mov ax,51
mov cx,340
mov dx,OFFSET buf
mov es,SEG buf
int 33h

```

MOUSE FUNCTION 52: GET MOUSE.INI

Call with M1% = 52

Returns M1% = 0
M3% = segment of buffer
M4% = offset of buffer

Description Mouse Function 52 returns a pointer to a buffer that contains a string that is the full path of the location of the mouse-driver initialization file, *MOUSE.INI*. *M3%* and *M4%* (ES:DX) return the segment and offset of the buffer.

If the environment variable *MOUSE* is defined, the value of the variable is used to determine the full pathname of *MOUSE.INI*. If the environment variable is not defined and you are using DOS 3.0 or later, then the directory that contains the mouse driver is used to determine the full pathname of *MOUSE.INI*. If the environment variable is not defined, the version of DOS you are using is earlier than 3.0, and you have a hard-disk drive (C:), then *C:\MOUSE.INI* is returned; otherwise, *A:\MOUSE.INI* is returned. If *MOUSE.INI* does not exist, the buffer contains a null string.

This function is available in mouse-driver version 8.0 or later.

Examples Each of the following program fragments returns the location of the current mouse switch settings.

Interpreted Basic

```
110 ' Get Location of Switch Settings
120 M1% = 52
130 CALL MOUSE(M1%, M2%, M3%, M4%)
```

QuickBasic

```
' Get Location of Switch Settings
iReg.ax = 52
InterruptX &H33, iReg, oReg
```

C/QuickC

```
/* Get Location of Switch Settings */
iReg.x.ax = 52;
int86x(0x33, &iReg, &oReg, segregs);
```

MASM

```
; Get Location of Switch Settings
mov ax,52
int 33h
```

Chapter 9

Sample Mouse Programming Interface Programs

This chapter presents mouse programming examples that use interpreted Basic, QuickBasic, C and QuickC, MASM, FORTRAN, and Pascal. You will see some overlap of functionality among the programs; however, there are significant differences in style and programming techniques that can provide insight into the many ways you can program the mouse.

The two basic means by which you call mouse functions are the MOUSE.LIB library and Interrupt 33H. Using the mouse library is straightforward and self-documenting, as shown in many of the following programs. Note that the MOUSE.LIB library provides subroutines for each of the major Microsoft language products. (See Chapter 6, “Mouse Programming Interface,” for more information.)

Using the mouse interrupt requires calling Interrupt 33H directly. Most of the languages mentioned above provide a built-in mechanism for calling system interrupts. Generally, most languages also provide a method for passing and retrieving register values. Calling mouse functions by using Interrupt 33H offers slightly faster speed and greater efficiency; however, in doing so you might sacrifice some program readability and simplicity.

Several of the programs that follow are presented in more than one language. These programs provide an opportunity to learn more

about programming in different languages. For example, if you're learning C and you already know QuickBasic, you might want to examine the QBTEST.BAS and CTEST.C programs to compare how the programs use the mouse function calls.

NOTE: For information about writing programs in Turbo Pascal, see Appendix E, "Making Calls from Borland Turbo Pascal Programs."

The companion disks that come with this book include subdirectories for each language. Programming examples for each language are contained in the subdirectories.

NOTE: This chapter contains descriptions of each of the programs listed below; however, the actual code for some of the lengthy programs appears only on disk. You can use your favorite text editor to view the source code for these programs on your screen, or you can print the source-code files if you want to work with hard copy.

```

\BAS\C
  tst1.bas
  batest.bas
  piano.bas

\QB
  qbmou.bas
  qbint.bas
  qbinc.bas
  absolute.bas
  intrrupt.bas
  mouse.bas
  mousedem.bas
  qb12&20.bas
  qb24.bas
  qbtest.bas
  pencil.bas

\QC&C
  cmouse.c
  ctest.c
  lpen.c
  mous_int.c
  mous_lib.c
  mouh_int.c
  mouh_lib.c
  mscecamp.c
  pencil.c

```

(continued)

```

m20sub.asm
catspaw.c
info.c
mva.c
scurry.c

\ASM
tst1.asm
atest.asm
asmexamp.asm
tst12&20.asm
tst24.asm

\FORTRAN
for1.for
ftest.for
fdemo.for
subs.asm

\PASCAL
moushgcp.pas
initpas.asm
pasexamp.pas
subs.asm
pdemo.pas

```

INTERPRETED BASIC PROGRAMS

The programs in this section demonstrate using the mouse from interpreted Basic. The TST1.BAS program shows the minimum steps required for displaying the default graphics-mode cursor. The BATEST.BAS program is the interpreted-Basic version of a program that is presented in several languages in this chapter. The most sophisticated program is PIANO.BAS. This program lets you use the mouse to play music on a simulated piano keyboard and demonstrates the steps necessary to change the graphics-mode cursor.

To call the mouse functions from interpreted Basic, you must first determine the vector address of the mouse driver. The first few lines in each of these programs show how the address is determined. The segment of the address is saved in the *MOUSEG* variable, and the offset is saved in the *MOUSE* variable. After the program uses the DEF SEG statement to set the current segment to *MOUSEG*, it can call mouse functions with the CALL statement.

The CALL statement takes the following form:

```
CALL MOUSE(M1%, M2%, M3%, M4%)
```

The variable *MOUSE* contains the offset of the Basic entry point into the mouse driver, and *M1%*, *M2%*, *M3%*, and *M4%* are the names of the integer variables you chose for parameters in this call. (Constants and noninteger variables are not allowed.) All parameters must appear in the CALL statement even if no value is assigned to one or more of them. To ensure that the variables are integer variables, include the percent sign (%) as part of all variable names.

See the TST1.BAS program for a straightforward example of the steps required to use the mouse with interpreted Basic.

The TST1.BAS Program

The TST1.BAS program demonstrates the steps required to activate and display the default graphics-mode cursor. To end the program, press any key.

```

10 '*****
20 '* TST1.BAS *
30 '* *
40 '* Displays graphics-mode mouse cursor until a key is pressed *
50 '* Note: Program assumes mouse and mouse driver are installed *
60 '*****
70 '
80 ' Set and clear the display
90 SCREEN 2
100 CLS
110 PRINT "Press any key to quit"
120 '
130 ' Determine mouse interrupt address
140 DEF SEG = 0
150 MOUSEG = 256 * PEEK(207) + PEEK(206)
160 MOUSE = 256 * PEEK(205) + PEEK(204) + 2
170 DEF SEG = MOUSEG
180 IF (MOUSEG OR (MOUSE - 2)) AND PEEK(MOUSE - 2) <> 207 THEN GOTO 210
190 PRINT "Mouse driver not found" : END
200 '
210 ' Reset mouse
220 M1% = 0
230 CALL MOUSE(M1%, M2%, M3%, M4%)
240 '
250 ' Show cursor

```

(continued)

```

260 M1% = 1
270 CALL MOUSE(M1%, M2%, M3%, M4%)
280 '
290 ' Wait for any key press
300 IF INKEY$ = "" THEN GOTO 300
310 '
320 ' Hide cursor
330 M1% = 2
340 CALL MOUSE(M1%, M2%, M3%, M4%)
350 '
360 ' Reset mouse
370 M1% = 0
380 CALL MOUSE(M1%, M2%, M3%, M4%)
390 '
400 END

```

The BATEST.BAS Program

The BATEST.BAS program uses mouse Function 11 (Read Mouse Motion Counters) to detect vertical mouse motion. The program displays a three-line menu with one option highlighted. When Function 11 detects vertical mouse motion, the program moves the highlight upward or downward in the list.

In addition, this program uses mouse Function 5 (Get Button Press Information) to detect a button press. To select a highlighted option, simply press either mouse button. Before the program terminates, it displays a message stating which option you selected and which button you pressed.

This program is presented in several languages in this chapter so that you can compare the mouse function calls in different languages. If you want to compare the programs, see the QBTEST.BAS, CTEST.C, ATEST.ASM, and FTEST.FOR programs.

```

100 '*****
110 '* BATEST.BAS *
120 '* *
130 '* Demonstrates use of the Microsoft Mouse from interpreted Basic *
140 '*****
150 '
160 ' Clear the display
170 CLS
180 '

```

(continued)

continued

```

190 ' Determine mouse interrupt address
200 DEF SEG = 0
210 MOUSEG = 256 PEEK(207) + PEEK(206)
220 MOUSE = 256 PEEK(205) + PEEK(204) + 2
230 DEF SEG = MOUSEG
232 IF (MOUSEG OR (MOUSE - 2)) AND PEEK(MOUSE - 2) <> 207
    THEN GOTO 260
234 PRINT "Mouse driver not found" : END
240 '
250 ' Display instructions for user
260 PRINT "BATEST - Mouse demonstration using interpreted Basic"
270 PRINT
280 PRINT "Use mouse to highlight a menu option."
290 PRINT "Press either button to select option."
300 '
310 ' Reset mouse and verify its existence
320 M1% = 0
330 CALL MOUSE(M1%, M2%, M3%, M4%)
340 '
350 ' Quit if mouse wasn't found
360 IF M1% = 0 THEN PRINT "Error: Mouse not found ": END
370 '
380 ' Initialize menu pointer to first option
390 MENUPTX% = 1
400 '
410 ' Initialize count of accumulated vertical mouse motion
420 MOTION% = 0
430 '
440 ' Set flag to cause the menu to be updated first time through
450 WFLAG% = 1
460 '
470 ' Main loop starts here
480 WHILE 1
490 '
500 ' Update the menu only when necessary
510   WHILE WFLAG% = 1
520     WFLAG% = 0
530     '
540     ' Print first line of the menu, highlighted if selected
550     IF MENUPTX% = 1 THEN COLOR 0,7 ELSE COLOR 7,0
560     LOCATE 10, 29
570     PRINT " 1. First option  "
580     '
590     ' Print second line of the menu, highlighted if selected

```

(continued)

```

600     IF MENUPTX% = 2 THEN COLOR 0,7 ELSE COLOR 7,0
610     LOCATE 11, 29
620     PRINT " 2. Second option  "
630     '
640     ' Print third line of the menu, highlighted if selected
650     IF MENUPTX% = 3 THEN COLOR 0,7 ELSE COLOR 7,0
660     LOCATE 12, 29
670     PRINT " 3. Third option  "
680     '
690     ' Be sure highlighting is turned off
700     COLOR 7, 0
710     '
720     ' End of updating the menu
730 WEND
740 '
750 ' Accumulate vertical mouse motion counts
760 M1% = 11
770 CALL MOUSE(M1%, M2%, M3%, M4%)
780 MOTION% = MOTION% + M4%
790 '
800 ' Move up the menu if enough mouse motion
810 IF MOTION% > -17 THEN GOTO 880
820     MOTION% = 0
830     IF MENUPTX% <= 1 THEN GOTO 880
840         MENUPTX% = MENUPTX% - 1
850         WFLAG% = 1
860 '
870 ' Move down the menu if enough mouse motion
880 IF MOTION% < 17 THEN GOTO 950
890     MOTION% = 0
900     IF MENUPTX% >= 3 THEN GOTO 950
910         MENUPTX% = MENUPTX% + 1
920         WFLAG% = 1
930 '
940 ' Check if left button pressed
950 M1% = 5
960 M2% = 0
970 CALL MOUSE(M1%, M2%, M3%, M4%)
980 IF M2% = 0 THEN GOTO 1030
990     PRINT "Left button used to select option", MENUPTX%
1000    END
1010 '
1020 ' Check if right button pressed
1030 M1% = 5
1040 M2% = 1

```

(continued)

continued

```

1050 CALL MOUSE(M1%, M2%, M3%, M4%)
1060 IF M2% = 0 THEN GOTO 1110
1070 PRINT "Right button used to select option", MENUPTTR%
1080 END
1090 '
1100 ' Loop back until one button is pressed
1110 WEND

```

The PIANO.BAS Program

The PIANO.BAS program creates a graphics-mode piano keyboard and lets you play the keys by using the mouse. If you want to play notes in a lower octave, select the keys by pressing the left-hand mouse button. If you want to play notes in a higher octave, select the keys by pressing the right-hand mouse button.

This program demonstrates several mouse function calls. Function 9 (Set Graphics Cursor Block) sets the cursor shape. Function 4 (Set Mouse Cursor Position) sets the cursor position. Function 1 (Show Cursor) makes the cursor visible. Function 3 (Get Button Status and Mouse Position) gets the mouse location and button status information. The program uses the block of DATA statements at the end of the listing to create the Microsoft logo.

NOTE: Because of this program's length, it is included on the companion disks that come with this book rather than listed here. You can use your favorite text editor to view the source code for the program on your screen, or you can print the source code if you want to work with hard copy.

QUICKBASIC PROGRAMS

You can call mouse functions from QuickBasic in several ways. The programs that follow call mouse functions by using the MOUSE subprogram in MOUSE.LIB and the INTERRUPT and ABSOLUTE subprograms supplied with QuickBasic.

The simplest programs are QBMOU.BAS, QBINT.BAS, and QBINC.BAS. Each of these programs displays the text-mode cursor and then waits for you to press a key before terminating. In these programs, the mouse functions are called by using the MOUSE and INTERRUPT subprograms, providing a direct comparison between the two calling methods. The QBINT.BAS and QBINC.BAS programs differ only in the way you make declarations to prepare for using the INTERRUPT subprogram.

ABSOLUTE.BAS, INTRRUPT.BAS, and MOUSE.BAS are larger programs that demonstrate how you can make the same mouse function calls by using CALL ABSOLUTE, CALL INTERRUPT, or CALL MOUSE. Two of these programs create a new graphics-mode cursor.

The MOUSEDEM.BAS program presents some useful QuickBasic subprograms in addition to demonstrating several mouse functions. MOUSEDEM.BAS changes the text-mode cursor and displays pop-up windows as it demonstrates each function.

The QB12&20.BAS and QB24.BAS programs present examples of setting and swapping user-interrupt subroutines by using Functions 12, 20, and 24. These interrupt subroutines are activated quickly while a program is running when they detect mouse motion, mouse button presses, or combinations of Shift key presses and mouse activity.

The QBTEST.BAS program is the three-line menu program that detects vertical mouse motion. It is presented in several other languages in this chapter for comparison.

All these programs require that you load a Quick Library with the QuickBasic environment. Programs that use INTERRUPT or ABSOLUTE subprograms can use the QB.QLB Quick Library supplied with QuickBasic. To load this file with QuickBasic, type the following command at the MS-DOS prompt:

```
QB /L QB.QLB
```

Programs that call the MOUSE subprogram require that the Quick Library loaded in memory include the code found in the MOUSE.LIB library. You can create a new Quick Library named QBMOUSE.QLB that contains the MOUSE.LIB routines in addition to the QB.QLB routines by typing the following command:

```
LINK /QU /NOE QB.LIB + MOUSE.LIB, QBMOUSE.QLB, NUL, BQLB45.LIB;
```

NOTE: To be sure that LINK finds each file, copy MOUSE.LIB, QB.LIB, and BQLB45.LIB into your current directory.

The following command also creates a combined library that lets your programs compile and link into stand-alone .EXE programs:

```
LIB QBMOUSE.LIB + MOUSE.LIB + QB.LIB;
```

After you create the QBMOUSE.QLB and QBMOUSE.LIB libraries, start QuickBasic by typing the following command:

```
QB /L QBMOUSE.QLB
```

When you load QBMOUSE.QLB into the QuickBasic environment, all QuickBasic programs in this section will run, whether they call the mouse functions by using CALL ABSOLUTE, CALL INTERRUPT, or CALL MOUSES.

The first three programs here, QBMOU.BAS, QBINT.BAS, and QBINC.BAS, demonstrate three variations on calling mouse functions. Each program clears the screen, displays the text-mode cursor, and waits for you to press a key before terminating.

The QBMOU.BAS Program

The QBMOU.BAS program calls the MOUSE subprogram provided in the MOUSE.LIB library. To call this subprogram from the QuickBasic environment, you must build and load the QBMOUSE.QLB library as described earlier in this section.

```
'*****
'* QBMOU.BAS *
'* * *
'* Calls mouse functions using the MOUSE subprogram *
'* * *
'* To load QBMOUSE.QLB into memory with QuickBasic, *
'* type: QB /L QBMOUSE.QLB *
'*****

' Initialization
DEFINT A-Z
DECLARE SUB Mouses (m1%, m2%, m3%, m4%)
CLS
PRINT "Press any key to quit"

' Mouse Reset and Status
m1 = 0
Mouses m1, m2, m3, m4

' Show Cursor
m1 = 1
Mouses m1, m2, m3, m4

' Wait until a key is pressed
DO
LOOP WHILE INKEY$ = ""
```

(continued)

```
' Reset mouse driver
m1 = 0
Mouses m1, m2, m3, m4

END
```

The QBINT.BAS Program

The QBINT.BAS program calls mouse functions by using the INTERRUPT subprogram. The INTERRUPT subprogram is part of the QB.QLB Quick Library that comes with QuickBasic. Before you load and run QBINT.BAS, be sure you load the QB.QLB library into the QuickBasic environment.

```
'*****
'* QBINT.BAS *
'* * *
'* Calls mouse functions by using the INTERRUPT subprogram *
'* * *
'* To load QB.QLB into memory with QuickBasic, type: *
'* QB /L QB.QLB *
'******

DEFINT A-Z

TYPE RegType
    ax AS INTEGER
    bx AS INTEGER
    cx AS INTEGER
    dx AS INTEGER
    bp AS INTEGER
    si AS INTEGER
    di AS INTEGER
    flags AS INTEGER
END TYPE

DECLARE SUB Interrupt (inum%, iReg AS RegType, oReg AS RegType)

DIM iReg AS RegType
DIM oReg AS RegType

' Initialization
CLS
PRINT "Press any key to quit"
```

(continued)

continued

```

' Mouse Reset and Status
iReg.ax = 0
Interrupt &H33, iReg, oReg

' Show Cursor
iReg.ax = 1
Interrupt &H33, iReg, oReg

' Wait until any key is pressed
DO
LOOP WHILE INKEY$ = ""

' Hide Cursor
iReg.ax = 2
Interrupt &H33, iReg, oReg

' Reset mouse
iReg.ax = 0
Interrupt &H33, iReg, oReg

END

```

The QBINC.BAS Program

The QBINC.BAS program is almost identical to the QBINT.BAS program except that you make the declarations necessary to use the INTERRUPT subprogram by including the QB.BI file. To insert the contents of the QB.BI file at the appropriate place in the listing, simply use the \$INCLUDE metacommand. Like QBINT.BAS, the QBINC.BAS program requires that you load the QB.QLB library into the QuickBasic environment.

```

'*****
'* QBINC.BAS *
'* * *
'* Calls mouse functions by using the INTERRUPT subprogram *
'* * *
'* Declarations for INTERRUPT are loaded from the *
'* QB.BI file by the $INCLUDE metacommand. *
'* * *
'* To load QB.QLB into memory with QuickBasic, type: *
'* QB /L QB.QLB *
'*****

```

(continued)

```

DEFINT A-Z

'$INCLUDE: 'QB.BI'

DIM iReg AS RegType
DIM oReg AS RegType

' Initialization
CLS
PRINT "Press any key to quit"

' Mouse Reset and Status
iReg.ax = 0
Interrupt &H33, iReg, oReg

' Show Cursor
iReg.ax = 1
Interrupt &H33, iReg, oReg

' Wait until any key is pressed
DO
LOOP WHILE INKEY$ = ""

' Hide Cursor
iReg.ax = 2
Interrupt &H33, iReg, oReg

' Reset mouse
iReg.ax = 0
Interrupt &H33, iReg, oReg

END

```

The ABSOLUTE.BAS Program

The ABSOLUTE.BAS program demonstrates working with the mouse from QuickBasic 4.5 by using the CALL ABSOLUTE command. This program employs several mouse functions. Function 0 (Mouse Reset and Status) resets the mouse, and Function 1 (Show Cursor) makes the cursor visible. Functions 7 (Set Minimum and Maximum Horizontal Cursor Position) and 8 (Set Minimum and Maximum Vertical Cursor Position) limit the cursor motion to the center of the screen. To check mouse status, the program calls Function 3 (Get Button Status and Mouse Position). Before the program terminates, it calls Function 0 (Mouse Reset and Status) to hide the cursor.


```

' Function 0 Mouse Reset and Status
M1 = 0
CALL ABSOLUTE(M1, M2, M3, M4, MOUSE)

' Function 7 Limit Horizontal Motion
M1 = 7: M3 = 100: M4 = 540
CALL ABSOLUTE(M1, M2, M3, M4, MOUSE)

' Function 8 Limit Vertical Motion
M1 = 8: M3 = 50: M4 = 300
CALL ABSOLUTE(M1, M2, M3, M4, MOUSE)

' Draw box to show mouse motion range
COLOR 1
LINE (100, 50) - (540, 50)
LINE (540, 50) - (540, 300)
LINE (540, 300) - (100, 300)
LINE (100, 300) - (100, 50)

' Function 1 Show Cursor
M1 = 1
CALL ABSOLUTE(M1, M2, M3, M4, MOUSE)

' Loop until button pressed

COLOR 7
M2 = 0
WHILE (M2 = 0)

    ' Function 3 Get Mouse Status and Mouse Position
    M1 = 3
    CALL ABSOLUTE(M1, M2, M3, M4, MOUSE)

    ' Print cursor location
    LOCATE 2, 2
    PRINT M3, M4
WEND

' Function 0 Mouse Reset and Status
M1 = 0
CALL ABSOLUTE(M1, M2, M3, M4, MOUSE)

ELSE PRINT "Mouse Driver Not Found": END
END IF

ELSE PRINT "Mouse Driver Not Found": END
END IF

```

The INTRRUPT.BAS Program

The INTRRUPT.BAS program demonstrates working with the mouse from QuickBasic 4.5 by using the CALL INTERRUPT subprogram. This program is similar in design and operation to the ABSOLUTE.BAS program. Many of the same functions are called by INTRRUPT.BAS. In addition, INTRRUPT.BAS calls Function 9 (Set Graphics Cursor Block) to set a new graphics-mode cursor shape.

Before you can run the INTRRUPT.BAS program, you must load QB.QLB into memory by typing the following command:

```
QB /L QB.QLB
```

The CALL INTERRUPT subprogram won't work if you don't load QB.QLB with QuickBasic.

You can now load and run the program. Notice that the new graphics-mode cursor appears inside a square that marks cursor-movement limits set by Functions 7 (Set Minimum and Maximum Horizontal Cursor Position) and 8 (Set Minimum and Maximum Vertical Cursor Position). To end the program, press the left-hand mouse button.

The INTRRUPT.BAS program was written for EGA graphics mode (SCREEN 9). For CGA operation, change the SCREEN and LINE statements.

You should also change the horizontal-motion and vertical-motion limits set in the calls to Functions 7 and 8 as required for the CGA mode you set.

NOTE: Because of this program's length, it is included on the companion disks that come with this book rather than listed here. You can use your favorite text editor to view the source code for the program on your screen, or you can print the source-code files if you want to work with hard copy.

The MOUSE.BAS Program

The MOUSE.BAS program demonstrates working with the mouse from QuickBasic 4.5 by using the CALL MOUSE function. This program is similar in design and operation to both the ABSOLUTE.BAS and the INTRRUPT.BAS programs.

The MOUSE subprogram is found in the MOUSE.LIB library. To call this subprogram from the QuickBasic environment, you must build and load the QBMOUSE.QLB library as described earlier.

You can now load and run the program. Notice that the new graphics-mode cursor appears inside a square that marks the cursor-movement limits set by Functions 7 (Set Minimum and Maximum Horizontal Cursor Position) and 8 (Set Minimum and Maximum Vertical Cursor Position). To terminate the program, press the left-hand mouse button.

The MOUSE.BAS program was written for EGA graphics mode (SCREEN 9). For CGA operation, change the SCREEN and LINE statements. You should also change the horizontal-motion and vertical-motion limits set in the calls to Functions 7 and 8 as required for the CGA mode you set.

```
'*****
'* MOUSE.BAS
'* 6/24/88 by Dave Tryon, Microsoft Product Support
'*
'* Demonstrates calling mouse functions by using CALL MOUSE
'*
'* To load QBMOUSE.QLB into memory with QuickBasic, type:
'* QB /L QBMOUSE.QLB
'*
'* Assumes EGA - For CGA change SCREEN and LINE statements
'******

' Initialization
DIM CURSOR(15, 1) AS INTEGER
COMMON CURSOR() AS INTEGER
DECLARE SUB MOUSES (M1%, M2%, M3%, M4%)
CLS

' Define Cursor Array
CURSOR(0, 0) = &HE1FF
CURSOR(1, 0) = &HE1FF
CURSOR(2, 0) = &HE1FF
CURSOR(3, 0) = &HE1FF
CURSOR(4, 0) = &HE1FF
CURSOR(5, 0) = &HE000
CURSOR(6, 0) = &HE000
CURSOR(7, 0) = &HE000
CURSOR(8, 0) = &H0
CURSOR(9, 0) = &H0
CURSOR(10, 0) = &H0
CURSOR(11, 0) = &H0
CURSOR(12, 0) = &H0
```

(continued)

continued

```

CURSOR(13, 0) = &H0
CURSOR(14, 0) = &H0
CURSOR(15, 0) = &H0
CURSOR(0, 1) = &H1E00
CURSOR(1, 1) = &H1200
CURSOR(2, 1) = &H1200
CURSOR(3, 1) = &H1200
CURSOR(4, 1) = &H1200
CURSOR(5, 1) = &H13FF
CURSOR(6, 1) = &H1249
CURSOR(7, 1) = &H1249
CURSOR(8, 1) = &HF249
CURSOR(9, 1) = &H9001
CURSOR(10, 1) = &H9001
CURSOR(11, 1) = &H9001
CURSOR(12, 1) = &H8001
CURSOR(13, 1) = &H8001
CURSOR(14, 1) = &H8001
CURSOR(15, 1) = &HFFFF

```

```

' Check whether mouse driver installed--exit if not.

```

```

DEF SEG = 0
MSEG = 256 * PEEK(51 * 4 + 3) + PEEK(51 * 4 + 2)
MOUSE1 = 256 * PEEK(51 * 4 + 1) + PEEK(51 * 4) + 2
IF MSEG OR (MOUSE1 - 2) THEN
  DEF SEG = MSEG
  IF PEEK(MOUSE1 - 2) <> 207 THEN
    SCREEN 9

```

```

' Function 0 Mouse Reset and Status

```

```

M1% = 0
CALL MOUSES(M1%, M2%, M3%, M4%)

```

```

' Function 7 Limit Horizontal Motion

```

```

M1% = 7: M3% = 100: M4% = 540
CALL MOUSES(M1%, M2%, M3%, M4%)

```

```

' Function 8 Limit Vertical Motion

```

```

M1% = 8: M3% = 50: M4% = 300
CALL MOUSES(M1%, M2%, M3%, M4%)

```

```

' Draw box to show mouse motion range

```

```

COLOR 1
LINE (100, 50) - (540, 50)

```

(continued)

```

LINE (540, 50) - (540, 300)
LINE (540, 300) - (100, 300)
LINE (100, 300) - (100, 50)

' Function 9 Set Graphics Cursor Block (custom cursor)
M1% = 9: M2% = 5: M3% = 0
CALL MOUSES(M1%, M2%, M3%, VARPTR(CURSOR(0, 0)))

' Function 1 Show Cursor
M1% = 1
CALL MOUSES(M1%, M2%, M3%, M4%)

' Loop until button pressed

COLOR 7
M2% = 0
WHILE (M2% = 0)

    ' Function 3 Get Button Status and Mouse Position
    M1% = 3
    CALL MOUSES(M1%, M2%, M3%, M4%)

    ' Print cursor location
    LOCATE 2, 2
    PRINT M3%, M4%
WEND

' Function 0 Mouse Reset and Status
M1% = 0
CALL MOUSES(M1%, M2%, M3%, M4%)

ELSE PRINT "Mouse Driver Not Found"
END IF

ELSE PRINT "Mouse Driver Not Found"
END IF

```

The MOUSEDEM.BAS Program

The MOUSEDEM.BAS program uses modular QuickBasic programming techniques to demonstrate uses of several mouse functions. The program makes calls to the mouse driver by calling the MouseDriver subprogram. The MouseDriver subprogram uses one CALL INTERRUPT to access the mouse driver.

This program demonstrates setting the hardware and software text cursors by using Function 10 (Set Text Cursor). The program

makes the cursor blink by setting an appropriate hardware cursor, and then it sets the cursor back to the default software cursor by means of a second call to Function 10. The comments in the program listing explain the process in detail.

The MOUSEDEM.BAS program also presents several creative subprograms that you might find useful. For example, the MoveFromScreen and MoveToScreen subprograms show one way to save and restore a rectangular area of the text-mode display.

Before you can run this program, you must load QB.QLB into memory by typing the following command:

```
QB /L QB.QLB
```

The CALL ABSOLUTE command won't work if you don't load QB.QLB with QuickBasic.

NOTE: Because of this program's length, it is included on the companion disks that come with this book rather than listed here. You can use your favorite text editor to view the source code for the program on your screen, or you can print the source-code files if you want to work with hard copy.

The QB12&20.BAS Program

The QB12&20.BAS program demonstrates Functions 12 (Set Interrupt Subroutine Call Mask and Address) and 20 (Swap Interrupt Subroutines). Function 12 sets a user-interrupt subroutine, and Function 20 swaps this interrupt subroutine with a second subroutine.

The program displays the text-mode mouse cursor and lets you move the cursor around the screen. The cursor moves to the upper left corner of the screen whenever you press the right-hand mouse button.

When you press a key, Function 20 replaces the first interrupt subroutine with the second interrupt subroutine. Now, when you release the left mouse button, the cursor moves to the center of the screen.

To end the program, press any key.

```
'*****
'* QB12&20.BAS *
'* * *
'* Demonstrates Mouse Functions 12 and 20 *
'* * *
'* To load QB.QLB into memory with QuickBasic, type: *
'* QB /L QB.QLB *
'*****
```

(continued)

```
DEFINT A-Z
```

```
TYPE RegType
```

```
    ax AS INTEGER
```

```
    bx AS INTEGER
```

```
    cx AS INTEGER
```

```
    dx AS INTEGER
```

```
    bp AS INTEGER
```

```
    si AS INTEGER
```

```
    di AS INTEGER
```

```
    flags AS INTEGER
```

```
END TYPE
```

```
DECLARE SUB Interrupt (intnum%, iReg AS RegType, oReg AS RegType)
```

```
DIM iReg AS RegType
```

```
DIM oReg AS RegType
```

```
DIM msub%(5), msub2%(5)
```

```
COMMON msub%(), msub2%()
```

```
' First instructions
```

```
CLS
```

```
PRINT "Test by pressing right mouse button"
```

```
PRINT "Then press enter"
```

```
' Build interrupt-driven subroutine to activate Function 12
```

```
msub%(0) = &H4B8
```

```
' Subroutine is from this code:
```

```
msub%(1) = &HB900
```

```
' MOV AX,4 ; Function 4, Set
```

```
' ; Mouse Cursor Position
```

```
msub%(2) = &H0
```

```
' MOV CX,0 ; Left edge of screen
```

```
msub%(3) = &HB8A
```

```
' MOV DX,0 ; Top edge of screen
```

```
msub%(4) = &HCD00
```

```
' INT 33h ; Mouse Interrupt
```

```
msub%(5) = &HCB33
```

```
' RETF ; Return to QuickBasic
```

```
' Build interrupt-driven subroutine to activate Function 20
```

```
msub2%(0) = &H4B8
```

```
' Subroutine is from this code:
```

```
msub2%(1) = &HB900
```

```
' MOV AX,4 ; Function 4, Set
```

```
' ; Mouse Cursor Position
```

```
msub2%(2) = &H140
```

```
' MOV CX,320 ; Middle of screen
```

```
msub2%(3) = &H64BA
```

```
' MOV DX,100 ; Middle of screen
```

```
msub2%(4) = &HCD00
```

```
' INT 33h ; Mouse Interrupt
```

```
msub2%(5) = &HCB33
```

```
' RETF ; Return to QuickBasic
```

(continued)

continued

```

' Mouse Reset and Status
iReg.ax = 0
Interrupt &H33, iReg, oReg

' Show Cursor
iReg.ax = 1
Interrupt &H33, iReg, oReg

' Set Interrupt Subroutine Call Mask and Address
iReg.ax = 12          ' Mouse Function 12
iReg.cx = 8          ' Interrupt when right button pressed
iReg.dx = VARPTR(msub%(0)) ' Offset of msub1
Interrupt &H33, iReg, oReg

' Wait until any key is pressed
DO
LOOP WHILE INKEY$ = ""

' Next instructions
CLS
PRINT "Next, test by pressing and releasing left mouse button"
PRINT "Then press Enter"

' Swap Interrupt Subroutines
iReg.ax = 20          ' Mouse Function 20
iReg.bx = VARSEG(msub2%(0)) ' Segment of msub2
iReg.cx = 4          ' Interrupt when left button released
iReg.dx = VARPTR(msub2%(0)) ' Offset of msub2
Interrupt &H33, iReg, oReg

' Wait until any key is pressed
DO
LOOP WHILE INKEY$ = ""

' Reset mouse to deactivate the interrupt
iReg.ax = 0
Interrupt &H33, iReg, oReg

END

```

The QB24.BAS Program

The QB24.BAS program uses Function 24 (Set Alternate Subroutine Call Mask and Address) to set a user-interrupt subroutine. The bytes that compose the short subroutine are placed in the *msub%()* array, and the address of the first member of that array is passed to Function 24 as the address of the subroutine.

The program builds the subroutine, displays the cursor, and calls Function 24 to activate the subroutine. The call mask is set so that you must press a Shift key and the left-hand mouse button simultaneously to cause the mouse driver to call the subroutine.

The program then enters a loop, waiting for you to press any key before terminating. During this time, you can move the cursor on the screen. If you press a Shift key and the left-hand mouse button, the cursor moves to the upper left corner of the screen.

WARNING: Shortly before the program terminates, it calls Function 0 (Mouse Reset and Status) to reset the mouse. Note that Function 0 will not deactivate the user-interrupt subroutine. The subroutine's address remains with the mouse driver even though the subroutine itself is not present. Activation of the subroutine will probably cause your system to crash.

```
*****
'* QB24.BAS *
'* * *
'* Demonstrates Mouse Function 24 *
'* Set Alternate Subroutine Call Mask and Address *
'* * *
'* To load QB.QLB into memory with QuickBasic, type: *
'* QB /L QB.QLB *
*****
```

```
DEFINT A-Z
```

```
TYPE RegType
```

```
  ax AS INTEGER
  bx AS INTEGER
  cx AS INTEGER
  dx AS INTEGER
  bp AS INTEGER
  si AS INTEGER
  di AS INTEGER
  flags AS INTEGER
```

```
END TYPE
```

(continued)

continued

```

DECLARE SUB Interrupt (intnum%, iReg AS RegType, oReg AS RegType)

DIM iReg AS RegType
DIM oReg AS RegType

DIM msub%(5)
COMMON msub%()

' Build interrupt-driven subroutine to activate Function 24
msub%(0) = &H4B8      ' Subroutine is from this code:
msub%(1) = &HB900     '   MOV AX,4 ; Function 4, Set
                        '   ; Mouse Cursor Position
msub%(2) = &H0        '   MOV CX,0 ; Left edge of screen
msub%(3) = &HBAA      '   MOV DX,0 ; Top edge of screen
msub%(4) = &HC000     '   INT 33h ; Mouse Interrupt
msub%(5) = &HCB33    '   RETF ; Return to QuickBasic

' Display instructions
CLS
PRINT "Test while holding down Shift key while pressing
PRINT "and releasing the left mouse button"
PRINT "Then press Enter"

' Mouse Reset and Status
iReg.ax = 0
Interrupt &H33, iReg, oReg

' Show Cursor
iReg.ax = 1
Interrupt &H33, iReg, oReg

' Set Alternate Subroutine Call Mask and Address
iReg.ax = 24
iReg.cx = 36          ' Left button released and Shift key pressed
iReg.dx = VARPTR(msub%(0))
Interrupt &H33, iReg, oReg

' Wait until any key is pressed
DO
LOOP WHILE INKEY$ = ""

' Deactivate Function 24
iReg.ax = 24
iReg.cx = 32
Interrupt &H33, iReg, oReg

```

(continued)

```

' Reset mouse
iReg.ax = 0
Interrupt &H33, iReg, oReg

END

```

The QBTEST.BAS Program

The QBTEST.BAS program uses Function 11 (Read Mouse Motion Counters) to detect vertical mouse motion. The program displays a three-line menu with one option highlighted. When Function 11 detects vertical mouse motion, the program moves the highlight upward or downward in the list.

In addition, this program uses Function 5 (Get Button Press Information) to detect a button press. To select a highlighted option, you simply press either mouse button. Before the program terminates, it displays a message stating which option you selected and which button you pressed.

This program is presented in several languages in this chapter so that you can compare the mouse function calls in different languages. If you want to compare the programs, see the BATEST.BAS, CTEST.C, ATEST.ASM, and FTEST.FOR programs in this chapter.

NOTE: Because of this program's length, it is included on the companion disks that come with this book rather than listed here. You can use your favorite text editor to view the source code for the program on your screen, or you can print the source-code files if you want to work with hard copy.

The PENCIL.BAS Program

The PENCIL.BAS program is an enjoyable sketching program that you can expand into a complete graphics-editing package. It demonstrates several mouse functions and defines and uses more than one graphics-mode cursor. Depending on the state of the program, the cursor appears as an image of the Microsoft Mouse or as a pencil.

This chapter also offers the PENCIL program in C and QuickC. (See the PENCIL.C program later in this chapter.)

NOTE: Because of this program's length, it is included on the companion disks that come with this book rather than listed here. You can use your favorite text editor to view the source code for the program on your screen, or you can print the source-code files if you want to work with hard copy.

C AND QUICKC PROGRAMS

This section presents a variety of mouse-programming examples that use the C and QuickC languages. Most of the following programs were set up for the medium-memory model. To set the memory model for QuickC, set Options to *Full Menus* and use the Options Make menu command to change the compiler flags to *Memory Model Medium*. In the header of each program listing, you will find instructions for compiling and linking under C version 6.0 and instructions for the program list requirements under QuickC.

To change these programs for other memory models under C, change all occurrences of *cmousem* to the function call appropriate for the desired model. These calls are listed in several program headers. Notice that the programs that call the mouse functions by using *int86x()* rather than the functions supplied in MOUSE.LIB require no change to the function names when compiling the programs for other memory models.

The CMOUSE.C Program

The CMOUSE.C program demonstrates and tests several important mouse functions. It also shows some useful programming techniques to help keep your mouse programs well organized. As the program executes these mouse functions, it displays a sequence of instructions.

The program also defines constants for the mouse functions, making the program listing easier to follow. In addition, the *#define* statements near the beginning of the program redefine these function numbers with text labels.

As listed in the program header, the C versions of the mouse calls in the MOUSE.LIB library are provided for all the memory models. To change memory models, you must change all occurrences of the mouse function call to the function name for the desired model. In this program, a *#define* statement creates a generic mouse function call, requiring changes to be made only in the *#define* statement in order to affect all mouse calls. Notice that only one occurrence of *cmousem()* appears in the entire listing.

NOTE: Because of this program's length, it is included on the companion disks that come with this book rather than listed here. You can use your favorite text editor to view the source code for the program on your screen, or you can print the source-code files if you want to work with hard copy.

The CTEST.C Program

The CTEST.C program uses Function 11 (Read Mouse Motion Counters) to detect vertical mouse motion. The program displays a three-line menu with one option highlighted. When Function 11 detects vertical mouse motion, the program moves the highlight upward or downward in the list.

In addition, this program uses Function 5 (Get Button Press Information) to detect a button press. To select a highlighted option, you simply press either mouse button. Before the program terminates, it displays a message stating which option you selected and which button you pressed.

This program is presented in several languages in this chapter so that you can compare the mouse function calls in different languages. If you want to compare the programs, see the BATEST.BAS, QBTEST.BAS, ATEST.ASM, and FTEST.FOR programs in this chapter.

NOTE: Because of this program's length, it is included on the companion disks that come with this book rather than listed here. You can use your favorite text editor to view the source code for the program on your screen, or you can print the source-code files if you want to work with hard copy.

The LPEN.C Program

The LPEN.C program uses Function 14 (Light-Pen Emulation Mode Off) to turn off light-pen emulation.

When the mouse is initialized by calling Function 0 (Mouse Reset and Status), light-pen emulation is turned on. The LPEN.C program resets the mouse and enters a loop, displaying the light-pen status of the BIOS video interrupt returned by Function 4 (Set Mouse Cursor Position). The AX, BX, CX, and DX registers are displayed constantly so that you can watch the effects of emulating the light pen by pressing both mouse buttons.

If you press any key, the program exits the first loop. The light-pen emulation is then turned off, and a second loop is entered. Again, the registers are displayed as the program continuously checks the light-pen position information from the BIOS. To end the program, press any key.

NOTE: The BIOS function that returns the light-pen information isn't set up for VGA but only for CGA and EGA. In VGA, you'll see a difference in the returned value of the AX register when the light-pen emulation is turned on or off; however, the returned position information remains constant.

```

/*****
* LPEN.C
*
* Demonstrates use of light-pen emulation from C 6.0
* and QuickC. First, emulation is on. Press both mouse
* buttons to emulate pen down. Press any key to turn
* off emulation. Registers returned from BIOS Function 4,
* Interrupt 10H, are displayed (Get Light-Pen Position).
*
* Note: The BIOS Function 4, Interrupt 10H, doesn't
* return the light-pen position for VGA. It's
* designed to work with CGA and EGA only.
*
* This program uses int86() to call the mouse driver.
*
* Microsoft C 6.0:
* cl lpen.c
*
* QuickC:
* Program List (not required)
*
* Note: Program assumes mouse driver and mouse installed.
*****/

#include <stdio.h>
#include <stdlib.h>
#include <dos.h>

main()
{
    union REGS iReg,oReg;
    struct SREGS segregs;

    /* Mouse Reset and Status */
    iReg.x.ax = 0;
    int86(0x33, &iReg, &oReg);

    /* Show Cursor */
    iReg.x.ax = 1;
    int86(0x33, &iReg, &oReg);

    /* Display message */
    printf("\n\nLight-Pen Emulation Mode On, Status...\n");
}

```

(continued)

```

while (!kbhit())
{
    iReg.h.ah = 4;                /* Get Light-Pen Position */
    int86(0x10, &iReg, &oReg);
    printf("\rAX: %.4X BX: %.4X CX: %.4X DX: %.4X",
           iReg.x.ax, iReg.x.bx, iReg.x.cx, iReg.x.dx);
}
getch();

/* Light-Pen Emulation Mode Off */
iReg.x.ax = 14;
int86(0x33, &iReg, &oReg);

/* Display message */
printf("\n\nLight-Pen Emulation Mode Off, Status...\n");

while (!kbhit())
{
    iReg.h.ah = 4;                /* Get Light-Pen Position */
    int86(0x10, &iReg, &oReg);
    printf("\rAX: %.4X BX: %.4X CX: %.4X DX: %.4X",
           iReg.x.ax, iReg.x.bx, iReg.x.cx, iReg.x.dx);
}
getch();

/* Mouse Reset and Status */
iReg.x.ax = 0;
int86(0x33, &iReg, &oReg);
exit (0);
}

```

The MOUS_INT.C, MOUS_LIB.C, MOUH_INT.C, and MOUH_LIB.C Programs

The MOUS_INT.C, MOUS_LIB.C, MOUH_INT.C, and MOUH_LIB.C programs demonstrate the differences between calling mouse functions by using the *int86x()* function and by using the mouse calls provided in the MOUSE.LIB library. MOUH_INT.C and MOUH_LIB.C also show the differences required for using the Hercules Graphics Card. These programs produce almost identical results.

Functions 7 (Set Minimum and Maximum Horizontal Cursor Position) and 8 (Set Minimum and Maximum Vertical Cursor Position) restrict the cursor motion to the middle half of the screen. Function 9

(Set Graphics Cursor Block) sets a new graphics-mode cursor, shaped like a pointing hand. As you move the cursor around the middle of the screen, Function 3 (Get Button Status and Mouse Position) continuously checks the mouse position, which is displayed in the upper left corner of the screen. To end the program, press either mouse button.

NOTE: Because of the length of these programs, they are included on the companion disks that come with this book rather than listed here. You can use your favorite text editor to view the source code for the programs on your screen, or you can print the source-code files if you want to work with hard copy.

The MSCEXAMP.C Program

The MSCEXAMP.C program demonstrates several common mouse functions and a subroutine that checks whether the mouse driver is installed. The default graphics-mode cursor is displayed, and its motion is limited by calls to Functions 7 (Set Minimum and Maximum Horizontal Cursor Position) and 8 (Set Minimum and Maximum Vertical Cursor Position). To end the program, press the left-hand mouse button.

This program is set up for a medium-memory model. To change it to any other model for C version 6.0, globally change all occurrences of *cmousem* to the appropriate call for the desired model. You'll also need to change the /AM option on the CL command line for the new model.

```

/*****
* MSCEXAMP.C
*
* Demonstrates use of the Microsoft Mouse from C 6.0
* and QuickC. It checks to see that the mouse driver was
* installed, displays a graphics-mode cursor, and limits
* cursor motion to the middle of the screen.
*
* The function cmousem() is for a medium-memory model.
* For other memory models, replace cmousem() with the
* appropriate function:
* cmouses() - C small model
* cmousec() - C compact model
* cmousem() - C medium model
* cmousel() - C large or huge model
*
* Microsoft C 6.0:
* cl /AM mscecamp.c -link mouse
*****/

```

(continued)

```

*
* QuickC:
*   Program List MSCEXAMP.C, MOUSE.LIB, GRAPHICS.LIB
*
*****/

#include <stdio.h>
#include <dos.h>
#include <graph.h>

void chkdrv();

#define mouse(a,b,c,d) cmousem(a,b,c,d)

main()
{
    int m1, m2, m3, m4;

    chkdrv();           /* Check for mouse driver */

    m1 = 0;             /* Initialize mouse */
    mouse(&m1, &m2, &m3, &m4);

    if ( m1 == 0 )
    {
        printf("Microsoft Mouse NOT found");
        exit (-1);     /* Exit, if mouse not found */
    }

    _setvideomode(_HRESBW);

    m1 = 4;             /* Function call 4 */
    m3 = 200;           /* Set mouse position at */
    m4 = 100;           /* center of the screen */
    mouse(&m1, &m2, &m3, &m4);

    m1 = 7;             /* Function call 7 */
    m3 = 150;           /* minimum horizontal value */
    m4 = 450;           /* maximum horizontal value */
    mouse(&m1, &m2, &m3, &m4);

    m1 = 8;             /* Function call 8 */
    m3 = 50;            /* minimum vertical value */
    m4 = 150;           /* maximum vertical value */
    mouse(&m1, &m2, &m3, &m4);
}

```

(continued)

continued

```

printf("Graphics cursor limited to center of the screen.\n");
printf("Press the left button to EXIT.");

m1 = 1;                /* Function 1, Show Cursor */
mouse(&m1, &m2, &m3, &m4);

m2 = 0;                /* Loop until left-hand mouse */
while ( m2 != 1 )     /* button is pressed */
{
    m1 = 3;
    mouse(&m1, &m2, &m3, &m4);
}

m1 = 2;                /* Function 2, Hide Cursor */
mouse(&m1, &m2, &m3, &m4);

_setvideomode(_DEFAULTMODE);
exit (0);
}

void chkdrv ()
{
    unsigned long address;
    unsigned char first_byte;

    union REGS inregs, outregs; /* Structures to contain */
    struct SREGS segregs;       /* register values for intdosx */

    inregs.x.ax = 0x3533;       /* Get interrupt vector for 0x33 */
    intdosx (&inregs, &outregs, &segregs);
    address = (((long) segregs.es) << 16) + (long) outregs.x.bx ;
    first_byte = (unsigned char) * (long far *) address;

    /* Be sure vector isn't 0 and first instruction isn't iret */
    if ((address == 0L) || (first_byte == 0xCF))
    {
        printf ("\nThe Mouse Driver must be installed to use this program");
        exit (-1);
    }
}
}

```

The PENCIL.C Program

The PENCIL.C program is an enjoyable sketching program that you can expand into a complete graphics-editing package. It demonstrates several mouse functions and defines and uses more than one graphics-mode cursor. Depending on the state of the program, the cursor appears as an image of the Microsoft Mouse or as a pencil.

This chapter also offers the PENCIL program in QuickBasic. (See the PENCIL.BAS program earlier in this chapter.)

This program uses Function 20 (Swap Interrupt Subroutines) to set an interrupt-driven user subroutine. Function 20 swaps subroutines, which is acceptable even if the subroutine is the only one being used. You can also use Function 24 (Set Alternate Subroutine Call Mask and Address).

In the header of the program listing, you will find a list of the mouse functions used in the program, as well as the commands used to build the program under C version 6.0 or QuickC.

NOTE: Because of this program's length, it is included on the companion disks that come with this book rather than listed here. You can use your favorite text editor to view the source code for the program on your screen, or you can print the source-code files if you want to work with hard copy.

The M20SUB.ASM Program

The M20SUB.ASM program provides the interrupt-driven subroutine named NewMouseHardwareSub for the PENCIL.C program. This subroutine returns the current status of the mouse in four C variables, each of which is declared EXTRN in this listing.

PENCIL uses Function 20 (Swap Interrupt Subroutines) to set this subroutine. The passed call mask causes this subroutine to activate when you release the right-hand mouse button.

```

;*****
;* M20SUB.ASM *
;* * *
;* MASM subroutine for C/QuickC program PENCIL.C *
;* * *
;* _NewMouseHardwareSub: *
;* Description: Passes the mouse variables to the C routine *
;* when a mouse interrupt occurs *

```

(continued)

continued

```

;*                                     *
;* This code is to be linked with PENCIL *
;* Example:                             *
;* masm /M1 m20sub;                       *
;* cl /AM pencil.c m20sub.obj -link mouse *
;*****
EXTRN _ButtonState:WORD          ; Mouse button state
EXTRN _HorizCursCoord:WORD       ; Current horizontal cursor position
EXTRN _VertCursCoord:WORD       ; Current vertical cursor position
EXTRN _MouseConditionBits:WORD  ; Condition that occurred resulting
                                ; in a call to this routine

code SEGMENT para public 'code'
    assume cs:code
    public _NewMouseHardwareSub

_NewMouseHardwareSub PROC far      ; Far procedure
    push DS                        ; Save current data segment
    push AX                        ; Save condition mask
    mov AX,SEG _ButtonState        ; Load data segment
    mov DS,AX
    pop AX                          ; Restore condition mask
    mov _MouseConditionBits,ax     ; Pass condition to C routine
    mov _ButtonState,BX            ; Pass button state to C routine
    mov _HorizCursCoord,CX         ; Pass cursor coordinates to C routine
    mov _VertCursCoord,DX
    pop DS                          ; Restore data segment
    RET                             ; Far return
_NewMouseHardwareSub ENDP

code ENDS
end                                ; End of NewMouseHardwareSub

```

MASM PROGRAMS

The programs in this section demonstrate calls to several mouse functions from MASM. The TST1.ASM program is a simple program that shows the basics of activating and displaying the standard default graphics-mode cursor. Other programs show the use of mouse functions that provide flexible, creative programming from the MASM environment. For example, the TST12&20.ASM program demonstrates how you can use more than one interrupt subroutine in your programs to respond quickly to mouse activity.

Making mouse function calls from MASM is similar to making mouse function calls from high-level languages. The most important difference is the use of the AX, BX, CX, and DX registers (instead of the *M1*, *M2*, *M3*, and *M4* integer variables) followed by a call to Interrupt 33H. Parameters passed to and received from the mouse functions use these registers. They correspond directly with the four integer variables.

In addition to the AX, BX, CX, and DX registers, some mouse function calls use the ES, DI, and SI registers. For example, Function 12 (Set Interrupt Subroutine Call Mask and Address) requires all four registers. (For more information about mouse functions, see Chapter 8, "Mouse Function Calls.")

The TST1.ASM Program

The TST1.ASM program resets the mouse, sets the graphics adapter to 640-by-200 black-and-white mode, and displays the standard graphics-mode cursor at the center of the screen.

To terminate this program, press any key. The cursor disappears and the video mode returns to 80-by-25 text mode.

```

;-----
; Program:      TST1.ASM
;
; Description:  Demonstrates the mouse in graphics mode
;
; To Run:      MASM TST1;
;              LINK TST1;
;              TST1
;
; Note: Program assumes mouse and mouse driver are installed.
;-----

.MODEL  LARGE
DOSSEG
.STACK  100h
.DATA
msg     db 13, 10
        db "TST1 - This program demonstrates the fundamental mouse", 13, 10
        db "function calls required to display a graphics-mode", 13, 10
        db "mouse cursor. Press any key to end the program...", 13, 10
        db 13, 10, "$"

```

(continued)

continued

```

.CODE
start: mov ax,@DATA
      mov ds,ax
      ; Set 640 x 200 black-and-white graphics mode
      xor ax,ax
      int 10h

      ; Mouse Reset and Status
      xor ax,ax
      int 33h

      ; Display the message
      mov ah,9h
      mov dx,OFFSET msg
      int 21h

      ; Show Cursor
      mov ax,1
      int 33h

      ; Wait for a keypress, allowing testing of mouse
      mov ah,8
      int 21h

      ; Reset the mouse
      xor ax,ax
      int 33h

      ; Set 80 x 25 text mode
      mov ax,3
      int 10h

      ; Exit to MS-DOS
      mov ax,4C00h
      int 21h

END   start
      END

```

The ATEST.ASM Program

The ATEST.ASM program uses Function 11 (Read Mouse Motion Counters) to detect vertical mouse motion. The program displays a three-line menu with one option highlighted. When Function 11 detects vertical mouse motion, the program moves the highlight upward or downward in the list.

In addition, this program uses Function 5 (Get Button Press Information) to detect a button press. To select a highlighted option, simply press either mouse button. Before the program terminates, it displays a message stating which option you selected and which button you pressed.

This program is presented in several languages in this chapter so that you can compare the mouse function calls in different languages. If you want to compare the programs, see the BATEST.BAS, QBTEST.BAS, CTEST.C, and FTEST.FOR programs in this chapter.

NOTE: Because of this program's length, it is included on the companion disks that come with this book rather than listed here. You can use your favorite text editor to view the source code for the program on your screen, or you can print the source-code files if you want to work with hard copy.

The ASMEXAMP.ASM Program

The ASMEXAMP.ASM program demonstrates several mouse function calls and checks that the mouse driver was installed. Function 7 (Set Minimum and Maximum Horizontal Cursor Position) and Function 8 (Set Minimum and Maximum Vertical Cursor Position) limit the cursor movement to the middle section of the screen. In addition, Function 3 (Get Button Status and Mouse Position) detects when you press the left-hand mouse button, at which time the program terminates.

```

-----
; Program:      ASMEXAMP.ASM
;
; Description:  Demonstrates mouse Functions 0, 1, 2, 3, 4, 7,
;              and 8. Displays graphics-mode cursor and
;              checks for installation of the mouse driver.
;
; To Run:      MASM ASMEXAMP;
;              LINK ASMEXAMP;
;              ASMEXAMP
-----

stack segment stack 'stack'
stack ends
data segment public 'data'
msg db "ASMEXAMP", 13, 10
    db "Demonstrates mouse Functions 0, 1, 2, "
    db "3, 4, 7, 8 in graphics mode."

```

(continued)

continued

```

                db 13, 10, 13, "$"
msg0           db "Mouse driver not installed","$"
msg1           db "Mouse not found","$"
msg2           db "Graphics cursor limit to center of the screen",0dh,0ah
                db "Press the left mouse button to EXIT","$"
data           ends

code           segment public 'code'
                assume cs:code, ds:nothing, es:nothing
start:
                mov     ax,seg data           ;Set DS to the
                mov     ds,ax                ;data segment
                assume  ds:data

                ; Check if mouse driver installed
                mov     ax,03533h           ;Get Int 33H vector
                int     21h                 ;by calling Int 21h.
                mov     ax,es               ;Check segment and offset of
                or      ax,bx                ;Int 33H. If 0 then driver
                jz      not_installed        ;is not installed.
                cmp     byte ptr es:[bx], 0CFh ;Also, if IRET then driver is
                jne     check_mouse          ;not installed.

not_installed:
                mov     dx,offset msg0      ;Message 0
                mov     ah,09h              ;Output message to screen
                int     21h
                mov     ax,4C01h            ;Exit
                int     21h

check_mouse:
                xor     ax,ax                ;Initialize mouse
                int     33h
                or      ax,ax                ;Is mouse installed?
                jnz     mouse_ok             ;Then continue

                ; Mouse not found
                mov     dx,offset msg1      ;Message 1
                mov     ah,09h              ;Output message to screen
                int     21h
                mov     ax,4C01h            ;Exit
                int     21h

```

(continued)

```

mouse_ok:
    mov     ax,0006h           ;Set up for 640 x 200 resolution
    int     10h               ;graphics mode (CGA mode 6)

    mov     dx,offset msg     ;Get main message
    mov     ah,90h           ;Output message to screen
    int     21h

    mov     ax,4              ;Function 4
    mov     cx,200           ;M3 = 200
    mov     dx,100          ;M4 = 100
    int     33h             ;Set Mouse Cursor Position

    mov     ax,7              ;Function 7
    mov     cx,150           ;M3 = 150
    mov     dx,450          ;M4 = 450
    int     33h             ;Set Minimum and Maximum Horizontal
                          ;Cursor Position

    mov     ax,8              ;Function 8
    mov     cx,50            ;M3 = 50
    mov     dx,150          ;M4 = 150
    int     33h             ;Set Minimum and Maximum Vertical
                          ;Cursor Position

    mov     ax,1              ;Show cursor
    int     33h

    mov     dx,offset msg2    ;Get exit message
    mov     ah,09h           ;Output message to screen
    int     21h

around:
    mov     ax,3              ;Function 3
    int     33h             ;Get Button Status and Mouse Position

    test    bx,0001h         ;Left button pressed?
    jz     around           ;Branch if left button NOT pressed

    xor     ax,ax            ;Function 0
    int     33h             ;Mouse Reset and Status

    mov     ax,0003h         ;Set up 80 x 25 character text mode
    int     10h

```

(continued)

continued

```

        mov     ax,04C00h           ;Normal exit
        int     21h

code    ends
end     start

```

The TST12&20.ASM Program

The TST12&20.ASM program demonstrates Functions 12 (Set Interrupt Subroutine Call Mask and Address) and 20 (Swap Interrupt Subroutines). Function 12 sets the first user-interrupt subroutine. This subroutine, which is activated when you press the right-hand mouse button, uses Function 4 to set the cursor position at the upper left corner of the screen. You can test this action by moving the cursor around the screen and occasionally pressing the right-hand mouse button. To begin testing Function 20, press any key.

Function 20 swaps user-interrupt subroutines. In this program, the second subroutine replaces the first, causing the cursor to act differently. Now, when you press the left-hand mouse button, the cursor moves to the middle of the screen. To test this action, move the cursor around the screen and press the left-hand mouse button. To terminate the program, press any key.

```

-----
; Program:      TST12&20.ASM
;
; Description:  Demonstrates Mouse Functions 12 and 20.
;
; To Run:      MASM TST12&20;
;              LINK TST12&20;
;              TST12&20
;
; Note: Program assumes mouse and mouse driver are installed.
;
-----

.MODEL  LARGE
DOSSEG
.STACK  100h

```

(continued)

```

.DATA
msg      db 13, 10
         db "TST12&&20", 13, 10, 13, 10
         db "This program demonstrates mouse Functions 12 and 20.", 13, 10
         db "First, press the right button to see how the function", 13, 10
         db "activated by Function 12 moves the cursor to", 13, 10
         db "the upper left corner of the screen.", 13, 10
         db 13, 10
         db "Next, press any key to cause Function 20 to", 13, 10
         db "activate a function that moves the cursor to the", 13, 10
         db "center of the screen when the left button is released.", 13, 10
         db "Finally, press any key to end the program.", 13, 10
         db 13, 10, "$"

.CODE

; This is the subroutine activated by Function 12
msub    PROC
        mov ax,4                ; Function 4, Set Mouse Cursor Position
        xor cx,cx                ; Left edge of screen
        mov dx,cx                ; Top edge of screen
        int 33h                 ; Move the cursor
        ret
msub    ENDP

; This is the replacement subroutine for Function 20
msub2   PROC
        mov ax,4                ; Function 4, Set Mouse Cursor Position
        mov cx,320               ; Middle of screen
        mov dx,100               ; Middle of screen
        int 33h                 ; Move the cursor
        ret
msub2   ENDP

; Set up DS for the data segment
start:  mov ax,@DATA
        mov ds,ax

; Display the message
        mov ah,09h
        mov dx,OFFSET msg
        int 21h

; Mouse Reset and Status
        xor ax,ax
        int 33h

```

(continued)

continued

```

; Show Cursor
mov ax,1
int 33h

; Set Interrupt Subroutine Call Mask and Address
mov ax,SEG msub
mov es,ax          ; Segment of sub into ES
mov ax,12         ; Mouse Function 12
mov cx,8         ; Interrupt when right button pressed
mov dx,OFFSET msub ; Offset of sub into DX
int 33h

; Wait for a keypress, allowing testing of mouse
mov ah,8
int 21h

; Swap Interrupt Subroutines
mov ax,20         ; Mouse Function 20
mov bx,SEG msub2 ; Offset of sub into BX
mov cx,4         ; Interrupt when left button released
mov dx,OFFSET msub2 ; Segment of sub into DX
int 33h

; Wait for a keypress, allowing testing of mouse
mov ah,8
int 21h

; Reset the mouse to deactivate the interrupt
xor ax,ax
int 33h

; Exit to MS-DOS
mov ax,4C00h
int 21h

END start
END

```

The TST24.ASM Program

The TST24.ASM program demonstrates Function 24 (Set Alternate Subroutine Call Mask and Address). Function 24 is similar to Function 12 (Set Interrupt Subroutine Call Mask and Address) in the way it sets a user-interrupt subroutine. However, unlike Function 12, this function allows activation of the subroutine based on Shift-key status at the time of the detected mouse activity. In this case, the cursor moves to the upper left corner of the screen only when you press a Shift key and the left-hand mouse button simultaneously.

```

;-----
; Program:      TST24.ASM
;
; Description:  This program demonstrates mouse Function 24.
;
; To Run:      MASM TST24;
;              LINK TST24;
;              TST24
;
; Note: Program assumes mouse and mouse driver are installed.
;-----

.MODEL  LARGE
DOSSEG
.STACK 100h
.DATA
msg     db 13, 10
        db "TST24", 13, 10, 13, 10
        db "Hold down the Shift key and click the left mouse button", 13, 10
        db "to demonstrate mouse Function 24. (The cursor will", 13, 10
        db "jump to the upper left corner of the screen.)", 13, 10
        db 13, 10
        db "Press any other key to quit", 13, 10, 13, 10, "$"

.CODE

; This is the subroutine activated by Function 24
msub   PROC
        mov ax,4           ; Function 4, Set Mouse Cursor Position
        xor cx,cx         ; Left edge of screen
        mov dx,cx         ; Top edge of screen
        int 33h          ; Move the cursor
        ret
msub   ENDP

```

(continued)

continued

```

; Set up DS for the data segment
start: mov ax,@DATA
      mov ds,ax

; Display the message
      mov ah,9h
      mov dx,OFFSET msg
      int 21h

; Mouse Reset and Status
      xor ax,ax
      int 33h

; Show Cursor
      mov ax,1
      int 33h

; Set Alternate Subroutine Call Mask and Address
      mov ax,SEG msub
      mov es,ax          ; Segment of sub into ES
      mov ax,24         ; Mouse Function 24
      mov cx,34         ; When Shift key and left button pressed
      mov dx,OFFSET msub ; Offset of sub into DX
      int 33h

; Wait for a keypress, allowing testing of mouse
      mov ah,8
      int 21h

; Deactivate Function 24
      mov ax,24
      mov cx,32
      int 33h

; Reset the mouse
      xor ax,ax
      int 33h

; Exit to DOS
exit:  mov ax,4C00h
      int 21h

END   start
      END

```

FORTRAN PROGRAMS

The following programs demonstrate calling mouse functions from FORTRAN 4.1. The shortest program is FOR1.FOR, which simply displays the default text-mode cursor and waits for you to press either mouse button before the program terminates. The FDEMO.FOR program sets a high-resolution graphics mode and displays a new cursor shaped like a mouse. The FTEST.FOR program is the FORTRAN version of the three-line menu that appears in several languages in this chapter.

The best way to program the mouse from FORTRAN is by calling the MOUSEL subroutine in the MOUSE.LIB library. When linking the programs, be sure to link with the MOUSE.LIB file. Each program uses the MOUSEL call.

The header of each program listing includes the compile-and-link command line, which you use to create each executable module.

The FOR1.FOR Program

The FOR1.FOR program resets the mouse, displays the cursor, and waits until you press either mouse button. When the program detects a button press, it hides the cursor and terminates.

This program shows the basic method of programming the mouse from FORTRAN. Each mouse function is called by using the MOUSEL subroutine provided in the MOUSE.LIB library. You must link this library file with FOR1.FOR in order for the program to run.

```
*****
* FOR1.FOR                                     *
*                                             *
* Short example of calling mouse functions from FORTRAN 4.1 *
*                                             *
* Compile using large model (default), and link with MOUSE.LIB *
* Example:  fl /Fpc for1.for -link mouse      *
*****
```

```
PROGRAM FOR1
```

```
INTEGER*2 M1, M2, M3, M4
```

```
* Display short message for user
  WRITE (*,*) 'Press either mouse button to quit'
```

(continued)

continued

```

* Mouse Reset and Status
  M1 = 0
  CALL MOUSEL (M1, M2, M3, M4)

* Show Cursor
  M1 = 1
  CALL MOUSEL (M1, M2, M3, M4)

100 CONTINUE

* Get Button Status and Mouse Position
  M1 = 3
  CALL MOUSEL (M1, M2, M3, M4)

* Loop until either button is pressed
  M2 = MOD(M2, 4)
  IF (M2 .EQ. 0) GOTO 100

* Mouse Reset and Status
  M1 = 0
  CALL MOUSEL (M1, M2, M3, M4)

STOP
END

```

The FTEST.FOR Program

The FTEST.FOR program uses Function 11 (Read Mouse Motion Counters) to detect vertical mouse motion. The program displays a three-line menu with one option highlighted. When Function 11 detects vertical mouse motion, the program moves the highlight upward or downward in the list.

In addition, this program uses Function 5 (Get Button Press Information) to detect a button press. To select a highlighted option, simply press either mouse button. Before the program terminates, it displays a message stating which option you selected and which button you pressed.

This program is presented in several languages in this chapter so that you can compare the mouse function calls in different languages. If you want to compare the programs, see the BATEST.BAS, QBTEST.BAS, CTEST.C, and ATEST.ASM programs in this chapter.

NOTE: This program uses the ANSI.SYS escape-code sequences to clear the screen, locate the cursor, and set the character attributes. You must load the ANSI.SYS file into memory, or these escape-code sequences will display strange characters and the menu won't function correctly. ANSI.SYS is loaded at system startup from a command in the CONFIG.SYS file. For more information about the ANSI.SYS file, see your MS-DOS documentation.

NOTE: Because of this program's length, it is included on the companion disks that come with this book rather than listed here. You can use your favorite text editor to view the source code for the program on your screen, or you can print the source-code files if you want to work with hard copy.

The FDEMO.FOR Program

The FDEMO.FOR program demonstrates one method of programming graphics-mode mouse functions by using FORTRAN. The MASM program SUBS.ASM supplies some important subroutines for this program. You must link SUBS.ASM and the MOUSE.LIB library with FDEMO.FOR for proper operation.

The INTEGER*2 array named MCURSOR holds the mask data for redefining the graphics-mode cursor. Function 9 (Set Graphics Cursor Block) sets the new cursor shape, and the mask redefines the cursor to look like a mouse—whiskers, tail, and all.

This program also demonstrates the operation of Function 16 (Conditional Off), which defines a rectangular region of the display that hides the cursor. The cursor remains visible unless you move it into the defined part of the screen. To see how this works, move the cursor to the upper left corner of the screen.

NOTE: Because of this program's length, it is included on the companion disks that come with this book rather than listed here. You can use your favorite text editor to view the source code for the program on your screen, or you can print the source-code files if you want to work with hard copy.

PASCAL PROGRAMS

The programs in this section demonstrate how you can program the mouse from Microsoft Pascal. The MOUSE.LIB library provides a procedure named *mouse1* for making calls from Pascal. Notice that this is the same routine called from FORTRAN. The languages share the same parameter-passing and procedure-calling mechanisms.

All these program examples use assembly language procedures. In addition, the following routines set the graphics modes and check for mouse-driver installation.

The MOUSHGCP.PAS Program

The MOUSHGCP.PAS program demonstrates programming the mouse for the Hercules Graphics Card. You must link this program with the INITPAS.OBJ object module and the MOUSE.LIB library for proper operation.

This program first calls the GRAF assembly routine to set the Hercules graphics mode (720 by 348 pixels). The program calls mouse functions to reset the mouse, display the cursor, and check for button-press information. When you press a mouse button, the program resets the mouse driver and sets the Hercules Graphics Card back to text mode.

```
(*
* Programmer:
* Eric Fogelin
*   June 1, 1987
* Purpose:
*   Using Microsoft Pascal to program mouse support for the Hercules
*   Monochrome Graphics Card (HGC).
*
* Arguments:
* None
*
* Limits:
* Must link with MOUSE.LIB and INITPAS.OBJ to resolve mouse function
*   calls and HGC display routine references.
*
* Make file:
*
*   moushgcp.obj: moushgcp.pas
*               pas1 moushgcp;
*               pas2;
*
*   initpas.obj: initpas.asm
*               masm initpas.asm;
*
*   moushgcp.exe: moushgcp.obj initpas.obj
*               link moushgcp + initpas,.,mouse.lib;
```

(continued)

```

*
* History:
*   6/1/87 - Created
*)

program mouse_hgc;

(* External references to mouse library and HGC screen routines *)
procedure mouse1 (vars m1, m2, m3, m4:word);extern;
procedure GMODE;extern;
procedure TMODE;extern;

var
  adsbyte: ads of char; (* 32-bit pointer, segment and offset *)
  m1, m2, m3, m4: word; (* Standard mouse parameters *)
  videomode: char;      (* Used to save/restore video mode *)

begin

  (* Point to byte which holds Video BIOS mode *)
  adsbyte.s := 16#0000;
  adsbyte.r := 16#0449;

  (* Save current screen mode value *)
  videomode := adsbyte^;

  (* Put HGC into graphics mode using modified Hercules INIT.ASM routine *)
  GMODE;

  (* Put byte value of 6 to direct graphics cursor to HGC page 0 *)
  adsbyte^ := chr(6);

  (* Reset mouse driver. HGC 720 x 348 resolution is recognized *)
  m1 := 0;
  mouse1 (m1, m2, m3, m4);

  (* Turn on default graphics cursor *)
  m1 := 1;
  mouse1 (m1, m2, m3, m4);

  (* Loop until either mouse button pressed *)
  repeat
    m1 := 3;
    mouse1 (m1, m2, m3, m4);
  until (m2 <> 0);

```

(continued)

continued

```
(* Reset mouse driver *)
m1 := 0;
mouse1 (m1, m2, m3, m4);

(* Set HGC back to text mode *)
TMODE;

(* Restore state of Video BIOS mode value *)
adsbyte^ := videomode;
```

end.

The INITPAS.ASM Program

The INITPAS.ASM module provides support code for the program MOUSHGCP.PAS. The *gmode* procedure sets the 6845 CRT controller for the 720-by-348 graphics mode of the Hercules Graphics Card. The *tmode* procedure sets Hercules text mode.

NOTE: Because of the length of this program, it is included on the companion disks that come with this book rather than listed here. You can use your favorite text editor to view the source code for the program on your screen, or you can print the source-code files if you want to work with hard copy.

The PASEXAMP.PAS Program

The PASEXAMP.PAS program demonstrates several mouse functions. It also checks that you installed the mouse driver before it tries to reset the driver. Functions 0 (Mouse Reset and Status) and 1 (Show Cursor) reset the mouse and display the cursor. Function 4 (Set Mouse Cursor Position) sets the cursor position. Functions 7 (Set Minimum and Maximum Horizontal Cursor Position) and 8 (Set Minimum and Maximum Vertical Cursor Position) restrict cursor motion to the middle part of the screen.

The program enters a loop, using Function 3 (Get Button Status and Mouse Position) to check continuously for a press of the left-hand mouse button. To end the program, press the left-hand mouse button.

NOTE: You must assemble and link the SUBS.ASM assembly language module with this program for proper operation. You must also link the MOUSE.LIB library to satisfy the mouse function calls.

```

{-----}
{ PASEXAMP.PAS - Mouse functions and Microsoft Pascal }
{ }
{ Program enters graphics mode, displays default }
{ cursor, restricts its range of motion, and quits when }
{ the left mouse button is pressed. }
{ }
{ Make File: }
{ }
{ pasexamp.obj: pasexamp.pas }
{ pas1 pasexamp; }
{ pas2 }
{ }
{ pasexamp.exe: pasexamp.obj subs.obj }
{ link pasexamp subs,....\mouse; }
{ }
{-----}

```

```

program mtest (output);

```

```

procedure mouse1(vars m1, m2, m3, m4:word);extern;
procedure chkdrv;extern;
procedure graf;extern;

```

```

var

```

```

    m1, m2, m3, m4: word;

```

```

begin {demo}

```

```

    chkdrv;           {Check mouse driver. If not }
                    {installed, exit.           }
    m1 := 0;         {Installed, initialize mouse}
    mouse1(m1, m2, m3, m4);

```

```

    if ( m1 = 0 ) then
        writeln('Microsoft Mouse NOT found')
    else
        begin

```

```

            m1 := 4;           {Function call 4, set mouse }
            m3 := 200;        {horizontal position     }
            m4 := 100;       {vertical position      }
            mouse1(m1, m2, m3, m4);

```

(continued)

continued

```

m1 := 7;          {Function call 7, set mouse }
m3 := 150;       {minimum horizontal position}
m4 := 450;       {maximum horizontal position}
mouse1(m1, m2, m3, m4);

m1 := 8;          {Function call 8, set mouse }
m3 := 50;        {minimum vertical position }
m4 := 150;       {maximum vertical position }
mouse1(m1, m2, m3, m4);

graf;            {Change into graphics mode }

writeln('Graphics cursor limited to center of the screen. ');
writeln('Press the left mouse button to EXIT. ');

m1 := 1;          {Function call 1           }
mouse1(m1, m2, m3, m4); {show mouse cursor }

m2 := 999;       {Dummy value for loop      }
repeat          {until left button pressed }
  m1 := 3;       {Function call 3           }
  mouse1(m1, m2, m3, m4); {get current mouse status }
until m2 := 1;  {Left mouse button pressed }

m1 := 0;         {Reset mouse driver        }
mouse1(m1, m2, m3, m4);

end

end. {demo}

```

The SUBS.ASM Program

The SUBS.ASM program module provides the *graf* and *chkdrv* subroutines for the PASEXAMP.PAS program. The *graf* subroutine sets a high-resolution graphics mode (640 by 200 pixels, 2 colors), and *chkdrv* checks that you installed the mouse driver.

The code in this module is identical to that in the SUBS.ASM module for the FORTRAN examples. Also, the parameter-passing conventions for Microsoft Pascal and Microsoft FORTRAN are the same. This explains why both languages call the same procedure (*mouse1*) from the MOUSE.LIB library.

```

;*****
;* SUBS.ASM *
;* *
;* MASM subroutines for PASCAL program PASEXAMP.PAS *
;* *
;* graf - Set 640 x 200, 2-color graphics mode *
;* chkdrv - Check that mouse driver is installed *
;* *
;* See PASEXAMP.PAS program for information on linking. *
;* *
;*****

mdata      segment byte public 'data'

           msg      db  "Mouse driver NOT installed","$"

mdata      ends

mcode      segment para public 'CODE'
           assume  cs:mcode

           public  graf

; graf - Set 640 x 200, 2-color graphics mode

graf       proc      far
           push     bp
           mov      ax,06h           ;Change to graphics
           int      10h             ;mode by calling
           pop      bp             ;Int 10H service
           ret

graf       endp

; chkdrv - Check that mouse driver is installed

           public  chkdrv

chkdrv     proc      far
           push     bp
           push     es

           mov      ax,03533h       ;Get Int 33H
           int      21h             ;by calling Int 21H
           mov      ax,es           ;Check segment and
           or       ax,bx           ;offset of Int 33H

```

(continued)

continued

```

                jnz     NotInstalled      ;vector if 0 or IRET
                cmp     byte ptr es:[bx],0cfh ;mouse driver not installed
                jne     back              ;Exit

NotInstalled:
                mov     ax,seg mdata       ;Set up DS to
                mov     ds,ax              ;point to data segment
                mov     dx,offset msg      ;Get message
                mov     ah,09h            ;out to screen
                int     21h
                pop     es
                pop     bp
                mov     ax,04c01h         ;Function code for
                int     21h               ;end process

back:
                pop     es
                pop     bp
                ret
chkdrv         endp
mcode         ends
end

```

The PDEMO.PAS Program

The PDEMO.PAS program demonstrates several mouse functions. Function 0 (Mouse Reset and Status) initializes the mouse. Function 9 (Set Graphics Cursor Block) sets a new graphics-mode cursor shape. In addition, Function 16 (Conditional Off) defines an area of the screen that hides the mouse. If you move the cursor to the upper left portion of the screen, Function 16 causes the cursor to disappear. Function 3 (Get Button Status and Mouse Position) waits for you to press the left-hand mouse button. When you do so, the program terminates.

```

{-----}
{ PDEMO.PAS - Mouse functions and Microsoft Pascal }
{ }
{ Program checks that mouse driver was installed, }
{ displays a graphics cursor, and hides the cursor }
{ if it moves into the upper left part of the screen. }
{ Program ends when left mouse button is pressed. }

```

(continued)

```

{
{   Make File:
{
{   pdemo.obj:  pdemo.pas
{           pas1 pdemo;
{           pas2
{
{   pdemo.exe:  pdemo.obj subs.obj
{           link pdemo subs,....\mouse;
{
{-----}

```

```
program mtest(output);
```

```
procedure mouse1(vars m1,m2,m3,m4:word);extern;
```

```
procedure chkdrv;extern;
```

```
procedure graf;extern;
```

```
var
```

```
    m1,m2,m3,m4:word;
```

```
    Cursor : array [0..31]of word;
```

```
    bound  : array [0..3] of word;
```

```
    ptradd : array [1..2] of word;
```

```
    i, j : integer;
```

```
begin
```

```
    for i := 0 to 15 do cursor[i] := 16#ffff;
```

```
    Cursor[16] := 16#8000;
```

```
    Cursor[17] := 16#E000;
```

```
    Cursor[18] := 16#F800;
```

```
    Cursor[19] := 16#FE00; {Initialize cursor array}
```

```
    Cursor[20] := 16#D800;
```

```
    Cursor[21] := 16#0C00;
```

```
    Cursor[22] := 16#0600;
```

```
    Cursor[23] := 16#0300;
```

```
    for j := 24 to 31 do Cursor[j] := 16#0000;
```

```
    chkdrv; {Check for mouse- }
```

```
           {driver installation }
```

```
    m1 := 0; {Function call 0 }
```

```
    mouse1(m1,m2,m3,m4); {Initialize mouse }
```

```
    if ( m1 = 0 ) then {No, output message }
```

```
        writeln('Microsoft Mouse NOT found')
```

(continued)

continued

```

else
  begin
    {Yes, demo Function 9}
    { and Function 16 }
    graf; {set to graphics mode}

    m1:=9; {Function call 9 }
    m2:=1; { set graphics cursor}
    m3:=1;
    ptradd[1] := (ads Cursor).r; {offset of the array }
    ptradd[2] := (ads Cursor).s; {segment of the array}
    mouse1(m1,m2,m3,ptradd[1]);

    writeln('Mouse cursor will disappear within this area. ');
    writeln('Press the right mouse button to EXIT.....');

    m1 := 1; {Function call 1 }
    mouse1(m1,m2,m3,m4); { show cursor }

    m1 := 16; {Function call 16 }
    bound[0] := 0; {Left x coordinate }
    bound[1] := 0; {Upper y coordinate }
    bound[2] := 390; {Right x coordinate }
    bound[3] := 25; {Lower y coordinate }
    ptradd[1] := (ads bound).r; {offset of the array}
    ptradd[2] := (ads bound).s; {segment of the array}
    mouse1(m1,m2,m3,ptradd[1]);

    m2 := 999; {Dummy value for loop}
    repeat {until... }
      m1 := 3; {Function call 3, get}
      mouse1(m1,m2,m3,m4); {current mouse status}
    until m2 := 2; {Left button pressed }

    m1 := 0; {Reset mouse driver }
    mouse1(m1,m2,m3,m4);

  end
end.

```

Chapter 10

Writing Mouse Programs for IBM EGA Modes

If your application program includes mouse support for IBM enhanced graphics modes D, E, F, and 10, your program must interact with the IBM Enhanced Graphics Adapter (EGA) through the new video interrupt functions provided in the mouse driver. You can simplify this programming by using a special library, the Microsoft EGA Register Interface library (EGA.LIB), which is included on the companion disks that come with this book. Or if you are programming in a language that can call interrupts, the program can call the video interrupt functions directly.

To prevent unnecessary problems when using EGA graphics, follow this rule: If your program will modify the EGA registers and if it uses the mouse, then you should use the EGA Register Interface library. If your program will not modify the EGA hardware directly, you don't need to use the EGA.LIB library.

The EGA hardware uses several write-only registers to control the many EGA display attributes. However, without the new video interrupt functions, the mouse driver would be unable to keep track of the contents of these special registers, and it would be impossible to correctly update the cursor position and shape if these registers were altered.

The EGA Register Interface lets your program write to and read from write-only registers on the EGA by keeping *shadow maps*, or working copies, of the registers. This capability is required for interrupt-driven graphics such as the cursor update code in the mouse driver.

THE EGA REGISTER INTERFACE LIBRARY

The Microsoft EGA Register Interface library consists of nine functions that you can call from MASM programs or from programs written in high-level languages such as Microsoft QuickBasic, C, QuickC, FORTRAN, and Pascal. The nine functions perform the following actions:

- Read from or write to one or more of the EGA write-only registers.
- Define default values for EGA write-only registers or reset the registers to these default values.
- Check whether the EGA Register Interface is present and, if so, return its version number.

How the Interface Library Works

Current versions of the mouse driver install the EGA Register Interface library if the driver detects an EGA installed in the system. The interface maintains shadow maps of the EGA write-only registers, which lets application programs read the registers. The shadow maps are updated whenever your program calls one of the interface functions to set a register; therefore, the shadow maps always contain the last values written to the registers. When your program calls one of the interface functions to read a register, the function call returns the value stored in the shadow map.

The code in the interface intercepts mode-change calls to the ROM BIOS (Interrupt 10H with AH = 0) and updates the shadow maps and default register tables accordingly.

Calling the Library from MASM Programs

To call EGA Register Interface functions from a MASM program, take the following steps:

1. Load the AX, BX, CX, DX, and ES registers (as required) with the parameter values.
2. Execute software Interrupt 10H.

Values returned by the EGA Register Interface functions are placed in the registers.

NOTE: When called from MASM programs, Functions F2, F3, F4, F5, and F7 expect ES:BX to be a table pointer. These functions are discussed in detail later in this chapter.

MASM Example

Use the following instructions to set the palette registers to the values in the *mytable* array:

```
mytable db 00h,01h,02h,03h,04h,05h,14h,07h
         db 38h,39h,3ah,3bh,3ch,3dh,3eh,3fh
         .
         .
         .
         mov ax,ds
         mov es,ax           ;Set ES to the data segment
         mov bx,offset mytable ;Now ES:BX --> mytable
         mov cx,0010h       ;Starting at reg 0 for 16
         mov dx,18h         ;18H = attribute chip
         mov ah,0f3h        ;F3H = write register range
         int 10h            ;Execute the interrupt
         .
         .
         .
```

Calling the Library from High-Level Language Programs

You can call EGA Register Interface functions from QuickBasic, C, QuickC, FORTRAN, and Pascal programs by linking the programs with the EGA.LIB library. This library provides several calls that match the parameter-passing and memory-model requirements of each language.

For all these languages, the EGA Register Interface call requires four integer parameters: *E1*, *E2*, *E3*, and *E4*. The following table shows how these parameters correspond to the registers listed in the function descriptions later in this chapter:

Parameter	Register
E1	AH
E2	BX
E3	CX
E4	DX

When your program calls the EGA Register Interface, the interface copies the parameters into the corresponding registers, calls the video interrupt, and copies the returned register values back into the parameters.

For Function FA, the value returned in the ES register is placed in the *E4* parameter. The way in which the parameters are passed to the EGA Register Interface determines how the ES register is loaded. Those calls that use short parameter addresses (*EGAS*, *cegas*, and *cegam*) copy the DS register into ES. Those calls that use long parameter addresses (*EGAL*, *cegac*, and *cegal*) copy the segment part of the address pointed to by *E2* into the ES register.

Calling from QuickBasic

To call the EGA Register Interface library from QuickBasic programs, use the *EGAS* subprogram. For functions requiring a table, pass the first element of an integer array or pass the address of a string by using the *SADD* function.

To access *EGA.LIB* from within the QuickBasic environment, create a Quick Library that contains *EGA.LIB*. For example, the following command combines the *QB.QLB*, *MOUSE.LIB*, and *EGA.LIB* libraries into a composite Quick Library named *QBNEW.QLB*:

```
LINK /QU /NOE
MOUSE.LIB+EGA.LIB+QB.LIB,QBNEW.QLB,NUL,BQLB45.LIB;
```

To load this new Quick Library with QuickBasic, enter the following command:

```
QB /L QBNEW.QLB
```

Alternatively, you can create the equivalent library file *QBNEW.LIB* by entering

```
LIB QBNEW.LIB+MOUSE.LIB+EGA.LIB+QB.LIB;
```

Creating this file lets your programs compile and link into *.EXE* programs, which you can run from the MS-DOS prompt.

QuickBasic example. The following example prints the version number of the EGA Register Interface.

```

' Get version number of EGA Register Interface

DEFINT A-Z

e1 = &HFA      'Interrogate driver
e2 = 0

CALL egas(e1, e2, e3, e4)

IF e2 <> 0 THEN
    PRINT "EGA Register Interface found, version";
    DEF SEG = e4
    majorVersion = PEEK(e2)
    minorVersion = PEEK(e2 + 1)
    DEF SEG
    PRINT USING "##_##"; majorVersion; minorVersion
ELSE
    PRINT "EGA Register Interface not found"
END IF

```

Calling from C and QuickC

To call the EGA Register Interface library from C programs, use the *cegas* function for small-model programs, the *cegam* function for medium-model programs, the *cegac* function for compact-model programs, or the *cegal* function for large-model programs. For functions requiring a table, pass a pointer to the name of a character array or a pointer to the array pointer.

To call the EGA Register Interface library from the QuickC programming environment, use the *cegam* function (the C function for medium-model programs) and add EGA.LIB to the program list. For functions requiring a table, pass a pointer to the name of a character array or a pointer to the array pointer.

C example. In a small-model C program (versions 3.0 and later), the following example restores the default settings for the EGA registers:

```

int ah, bx, cx, dx;

ah = 0xF6;          /* Restore default settings */
cegas(&ah, &bx, &cx, &dx);

```


Calling from FORTRAN

To call the EGA Register Interface library from FORTRAN programs, use the EGAL subprogram. For functions requiring a table, pass the first element of an integer array (packed 2 bytes per integer).

FORTRAN example. The EGA.FOR program calls EGAL to access the EGA Register Interface and uses Function FA to interrogate the driver. If the EGA Register Interface is present, its version number is displayed.

You must link this program with EGA.LIB in order to use the EGAL call, and you must link this program with IPEEK.OBJ in order to use the IPEEK function.

```
*****
* EGA.FOR *
* *
* Example of calling the EGA Register Interface from *
* FORTRAN *
* *
* Compile using large model (default), and link with *
* IPEEK.OBJ and EGA.LIB *
* *
* Example:  fl /Fpc ega.for ipeek.obj -link ega *
*****

PROGRAM EGA

INTEGER*2 E1, E2, E3, E4
INTEGER*2 MAJVER, MINVER

* Interrogate Driver
  E1 = #FA
  E2 = 0
  CALL EGAL (E1, E2, E3, E4)

* Check results
  IF (E2 .EQ. 0) GOTO 100

* Get the version numbers
  MAJVER = IPEEK(E4, E2)
  E2 = E2 + 1
  MINVER = IPEEK(E4, E2)

* Print the returned version number
  WRITE(*,10) MAJVER, MINVER
  10 FORMAT(1X, 'EGA Register Interface found. Version ',I2,'.',I2)
```

(continued)

```

* We're done
  GOTO 900

100 CONTINUE

* EGA Register Interface wasn't found
  WRITE(*,*) 'EGA Register Interface not found.'

900 CONTINUE
  END

```

You must assemble and link the IPEEK.ASM file with the EGA.FOR program. The IPEEK function lets a FORTRAN program get a byte from any location in memory.

```

;-----
; Function:      IPEEK
;
; Description:   Called from EGA.FOR to get a byte from
;               any location in memory.
;
; Example:      BYTVAL = IPEEK(SEG, OFS)
;
; To assemble:  MASM IPEEK;
;-----

.MODEL  LARGE
.CODE

        public  IPEEK

IPEEK  proc

; Standard entry
        PUSH  BP
        MOV   BP,SP
        PUSH  ES

; Load address, then load contents of first parameter into AX
        LES   BX,DWORD PTR[BP + 10]
        MOV   AX,ES:[BX]

; Save first parameter on stack (the segment for IPEEK)
        PUSH  AX

```

(continued)

continued

```

; Load address, then load contents of second parameter into AX
LES  BX,DWORD PTR[BP + 6]

; Load the registers with the parameters
MOV  BX,ES:[BX] ; Offset into BX
POP  ES        ; Segment into ES

; Peek at the byte
MOV  AL,ES:[BX]

; Zero the high byte of AX
XOR  AH,AH

; Clean up and exit
POP  ES
POP  BP
RET  8

; All done
IPEEK endp
END

```

Calling from Pascal

To call the EGA Register Interface library from Pascal programs, use the EGAS procedure if the argument addresses are in the program's data segment (short addresses). If the arguments are in another segment (long addresses), use the EGAL procedure. For functions requiring a table, pass a pointer to the first element of an integer array (packed 2 bytes per integer).

Pascal example. In a Pascal program with long argument addresses, include the following statement to declare EGAL as an external procedure:

```

PROCEDURE EGAL
(VARS E1, E2, E3, E4:INTEGER);
EXTRN;

```

Once the procedure is declared, include the following statements to restore the default settings for the EGA registers.

```
E1 := 246 (*Function number is 246 = F6 (hexadecimal)*)
EGAL (E1, E2, E3, E4)
```

Considerations When Calling ROM BIOS Video Routines

You need to be aware of special considerations when your program uses the EGA Register Interface library. The EGA Register Interface library intercepts only those calls to the ROM BIOS video routines that change the screen mode (Interrupt 10H, AH = 0, AL = 13h or less). It does not intercept any other ROM BIOS video routine calls. However, any other ROM BIOS video routine calls should restore all registers, so using them does not create a problem.

A call to Interrupt 10H to set the color palette (AH = 0Bh) is an exception to this rule. You should use EGA Register Interface Function F5 (Write Register Set) to set the color palette. For more information about Function F5, see “EGA Register Interface Functions” later in this chapter.

Attribute Controller Registers

Before your application program uses the Attribute Controller registers (input/output address 3C0h) in one of the new Interrupt 10H calls, the program must set the Address or Data register flip-flop to the Address register. It can do so by performing an input from input/output port 3BAh or C3DAh. The flip-flop is always reset to this state when the program returns from the Interrupt 10H call. (Note: The version of EGA.LIB included with this book sets the Address or Data register flip-flop to the Address register automatically.)

An interrupt routine that accesses the attribute chip always leaves the flip-flop set to the Address register when the program returns from the interrupt call. Therefore, if your application program sets the flip-flop to the Data register and expects the flip-flop to remain in this state, the program must disable interrupts between the time it sets the flip-flop to the Data register state and the last time the flip-flop was assumed to be in this state.

Sequencer Memory Mode Register

When the Sequencer Memory Mode register (input/output address 3C5h, Data register 4) is accessed, the sequencer produces a glitch on

the CAS lines that can cause problems with video random access memory (VRAM). As a result, your application program cannot use the EGA Register Interface to read from or write to this register. Instead, use the following procedure to alter this register:

1. Disable the interrupts.
2. Set Synchronous Reset (bit 1) in the Sequencer Reset register to 0.
3. Read from, write to, or modify the Sequencer Memory Mode register.
4. Set Synchronous Reset (bit 1) in the Sequencer Reset register to 1.
5. Enable the interrupts.

Input Status Registers

Your application program cannot use the EGA Register Interface to read Input Status registers 0 (input/output address 3C2h) and 1 (input/output address 3BAh or 3DAh). If the program must read these registers, it should do so directly.

Graphics Controller Miscellaneous Register

When the Graphics Controller Miscellaneous register (input/output address 3CFh, Data register 6) is accessed, a glitch occurs on the CAS lines that can cause problems with video random access memory (VRAM). As a result, your application program should not use the EGA Register Interface to read from or write to this register.

EGA Register Interface Function F6 (Revert to Default Registers) doesn't alter the state of the Graphics Controller Miscellaneous register. Use the following procedure to alter this register:

1. Disable the interrupts.
2. Set Synchronous Reset (bit 1) in the Sequencer Reset register to 0.
3. Read from, write to, or modify the Graphics Controller Miscellaneous register.
4. Set Synchronous Reset (bit 1) in the Sequencer Reset register to 1.
5. Enable the interrupts.

EGA REGISTER INTERFACE FUNCTIONS

The following table shows the number and the name of each function described in detail in this chapter:

Function Number (Hex)	Function Name
F0	Read One Register
F1	Write One Register
F2	Read Register Range
F3	Write Register Range
F4	Read Register Set
F5	Write Register Set
F6	Revert to Default Registers
F7	Define Default Register Table
FA	Interrogate Driver

NOTE: Function calls F8H, F9H, and FBH through FFH are reserved.

Each function description includes the following:

- The parameters required to make the call (input) and the expected return values (output)
- Any special considerations regarding the function

If the function description doesn't specify an input value for a parameter, you don't need to supply a value for that parameter before making the call. If the function description doesn't specify an output value for a parameter, the parameter's value is the same before and after the call.

NOTE: The EGA Register Interface doesn't check input values, so be sure that the values you load into the registers are correct before making a call.

FUNCTION F0: READ ONE REGISTER

Function F0 reads data from a specified register on the EGA.

Call with

AH	=	F0h
BX	=	Pointer for pointer/data chips:
BH	=	0
BL	=	pointer
		Ignored for single registers

DX = Port number:

Pointer/data chips

00h: CRT Controller (3B4h for monochrome modes;
3D4h for color modes)

08h: Sequencer (3C4h)

10h: Graphics Controller (3CEh)

18h: Attribute Controller (3C0h)

Single registers

20h: Miscellaneous Output register (3C2h)

28h: Feature Control register (3B4h for monochrome
modes; 3D4h for color modes)

30h: Graphics 1 Position register (3CCh)

38h: Graphics 2 Position register (3CAh)

Returns AX: Restored
BH: Restored
BL: Data
DX: Restored
All other registers restored

Examples The following example saves the contents of the Sequencer Map Mask register in *myvalue*:

```
myvalue db ?

mov ah,0f0h      ;F0 = read one register
mov bx,0002h    ;BH = 0 / BL = map mask index
mov dx,0008h    ;DX = sequencer
int 10h         ;Call the interrupt
mov myvalue,bl  ;Save the value
```

The following example saves the contents of the Miscellaneous Output register in *myvalue*:

```
myvalue db ?

mov ah,0f0h      ;F0 = read one register
mov dx,0020h    ;DX = miscellaneous output register
int 10h         ;Call the interrupt
mov myvalue,bl  ;Save the value
```

FUNCTION F1: WRITE ONE REGISTER

Function F1 writes data to a specified register on the EGA.

When your application program returns from a call to Function F1, the contents of the BH and DX registers are not restored. If you want to save and restore these registers, you must instruct your application program to do so.

Call with

AH	=	F1h
BL	=	Pointer for pointer/data chips
		<i>or</i>
		Data for single registers
BH	=	Data for pointer/data chips (ignored for single registers)
DX	=	Port number:
		<i>Pointer/data chips</i>
	00h:	CRT Controller (3B4h for monochrome modes; 3D4h for color modes)
	08h:	Sequencer (3C4h)
	10h:	Graphics Controller (3CEh)
	18h:	Attribute Controller (3C0h)
		<i>Single registers</i>
	20h:	Miscellaneous Output register (3C2h)
	28h:	Feature Control register (3B4h for monochrome modes; 3D4h for color modes)
	30h:	Graphics 1 Position register (3CCh)
	38h:	Graphics 2 Position register (3CAh)

Returns

AX:	Restored
BL:	Restored
BH:	Not restored
DX:	Not restored

All other registers restored

Examples The following example writes the contents of *myvalue* into the CRT Controller Cursor Start register:

```
myvalue db 3h

mov ah,0f1h ; F1 = write one register
mov bh,myvalue ; BH = data from myvalue
mov bl,000ah ; BL = cursor start index
xor dx,dx ; DX = crt controller
int 10h ; Call the interrupt
```


The following example writes the contents of *myvalue* into the Feature Control register:

```
myvalue db 2h

mov ah,0f1h    ; F1 = write one register
mov bl,myvalue ; BL = data from myvalue
mov dx,0028h  ; DX = feature control register
int 10h       ; Call the interrupt
```

FUNCTION F2: READ REGISTER RANGE

Function F2 reads data from a specified range of registers on the EGA. (A range of registers is several registers on a single chip that have consecutive indexes.) Using this call makes sense only for the pointer/data chips.

Call with

AH	=	F2h
CH	=	Starting pointer value
CL	=	Number of registers (must be > 1)
DX	=	Port number:
	00h:	CRT Controller (3B4h for monochrome modes; 3D4h for color modes)
	08h:	Sequencer (3C4h)
	10h:	Graphics Controller (3CEh)
	18h:	Attribute Controller (3C0h)

ES:BX = Points to a table of 1-byte entries (length = value in CL). On return, each entry is set to the contents of the corresponding register.

Returns

AX:	Restored
BX:	Restored
CX:	Not restored
DX:	Restored
ES:	Restored

All other registers restored

Example The following example saves the contents of the Attribute Controller Palette registers in *paltable*.

```

paltable db 16 dup (?)

        mov ax,ds           ; Assume paltable in
                           ; data segment
        mov es,ax          ; ES = data segment
        mov bx,offset paltable ; ES:BX = paltable address
        mov ah,0f2h        ; F2 = read register range
        mov cx,0010h       ; CH = start index of 0
                           ; CL = 16 registers
                           ; to read
        mov dx,0018h       ; DX = attribute
                           ; controller
        int 10h            ; Call the interrupt

```

FUNCTION F3: WRITE REGISTER RANGE

Function F3 writes data to a specified range of registers on the EGA. (A range of registers is several registers on a single chip that have consecutive indexes.) Using this call makes sense only for the pointer/data chips.

Call with

AH	= F3h
CH	= Starting pointer value
CL	= Number of registers (must be > 1)
DX	= Port number:
	00h: CRT Controller (3B4h for monochrome modes; 3D4h for color modes)
	08h: Sequencer (3C4h)
	10h: Graphics Controller (3CEh)
	18h: Attribute Controller (3C0h)

ES:BX = Points to a table of 1-byte entries (length = value in CL). Each entry contains the value to be written to the corresponding register.

Returns

AX:	Restored
BX:	Not restored
CX:	Not restored
DX:	Not restored
ES:	Restored

All other registers restored

Example The following example writes the contents of *cursloc* into the CRT Controller Cursor Location High and Cursor Location Low registers.

```

cursloc db 01h,00h          ; Cursor at page
                               ; offset 0100h

mov ax,ds                    ; Assume cursloc in
                               ; data segment
mov es,ax                    ; ES = data segment
mov bx,offset cursloc       ; ES:BX = cursloc address
mov ah,0f3h                  ; F3 = write register
                               ; range
mov cx,0e02h                ; CH = start index of 14
                               ; CL = 2 registers to
                               ; write
xor dx,dx                    ; DX = crt controller
int 10h                      ; Call the interrupt

```

FUNCTION F4: READ REGISTER SET

Function F4 reads data from a set of registers on the EGA. (A set of registers is several registers that might or might not have consecutive indexes and that might or might not be on the same chip.)

Call with

- AH = F4h
- CX = Number of registers (must be > 1)
- ES:BX = Points to table of records with each entry in the following format:

Byte 0: Port number

Pointer/data chips

00h: CRT Controller (3B4h for monochrome modes;
3D4h for color modes)

08h: Sequencer (3C4h)

10h: Graphics Controller (3CEh)

18h: Attribute Controller (3C0h)

Single registers

20h: Miscellaneous Output register (3C2h)

28h: Feature Control register (3B4h for monochrome
modes; 3D4h for color modes)

30h: Graphics 1 Position register (3CCh)

38h: Graphics 2 Position register (3CAh)

Byte 1: Must be zero

Byte 2: Pointer value (0 for single registers)

Byte 3: EGA Register Interface fills in data read from register specified in bytes 0 through 2

Returns AX: Restored
 BX: Restored
 CX: Not restored
 ES: Restored
 All other registers restored

Example The following example saves the contents of the Miscellaneous Output register, Sequencer Memory Mode register, and CRT Controller Mode Control register in *results*:

```

outvals dw 0020h ; Miscellaneous Output register
        db 0      ; 0 for single registers
        db ?      ; Returned value

        dw 0008h ; Sequencer
        db 04h   ; Memory Mode register index
        db ?     ; Returned value

        dw 0000h ; CRT Controller
        db 17h   ; Mode Control register index
        db ?     ; Returned value

results db 3 dup (?)

        mov ax,ds      ; Assume outvals in
                        ; data segment
        mov es,ax      ; ES = data segment
        mov bx,offset outvals ; ES:BX = outvals address
        mov ah,0f4h    ; F4 = read register set
        mov cx,3       ; Number of entries in
                        ; outvals
        int 10h        ; Get values into outvals
        mov si,offset outvals +3 ; Move the returned
                        ; values from outvals
        mov di,offset results ; to results
        mov cx,3       ; 3 values to move
        cld            ; Make moves forward

movloop: movsb        ; Move one value from outvals
                ; to results
        add si,3      ; Skip to next source byte
        loop movloop ; Get next byte

```

FUNCTION F5: WRITE REGISTER SET

Function F5 writes data to a set of registers on the EGA. (A set of registers is several registers that might or might not have consecutive indexes and that might or might not be on the same chip.)

Call with

AH = F5h
 CX = Number of registers (must be > 1)
 ES:BX = Points to table of values with each entry in the following format:

Byte 0: Port number
Pointer/data chips
 00h: CRT Controller (3B4h for monochrome modes; 3D4h for color modes)
 08h: Sequencer (3C4h)
 10h: Graphics Controller (3CEh)
 18h: Attribute Controller (3C0h)
Single registers
 20h: Miscellaneous Output register (3C2h)
 28h: Feature Control register (3B4h for monochrome modes; 3D4h for color modes)
 30h: Graphics 1 Position register (3CCh)
 38h: Graphics 2 Position register (3CAh)
 Byte 1: Must be zero
 Byte 2: Pointer value (0 for single registers)
 Byte 3: Data to be written to register specified in bytes 0 through 2

Returns

AX: Restored
 BX: Restored
 CX: Not restored
 ES: Restored
 All other registers restored

Example The following example writes the contents of *outvals* to the Miscellaneous Output register, Sequencer Memory Mode register, and CRT Controller Mode Control register.

```

outvals dw 0020h ; Miscellaneous Output register
        db 0      ; 0 for single registers
        db 0a7h  ; Output value

        dw 0008h ; Sequencer
        db 04h   ; Memory Mode register index
        db 03h   ; Output value

        dw 0000h ; CRT Controller
        db 17h   ; Mode Control register index
        db 0a3h  ; Output value

mov ax,ds      ; Assume outvals in
               ; data segment
mov es,ax      ; ES = data segment
mov bx,offset outvals ; ES:BX = outvals address
mov ah,0f5h    ; F5 = write register set
mov cx,3       ; Number of entries in
               ; outvals
int 10h        ; Call the interrupt

```

FUNCTION F6: REVERT TO DEFAULT REGISTERS

Function F6 restores the default settings of any registers your application program changed through the EGA Register Interface. The default settings are defined in a call to Function F7.

Call with AH = F6h

Returns All registers restored

NOTE: If your program makes a call to Interrupt 10H, Function 0, to set the display mode, the default register values change to the BIOS values for the selected mode.

Example The following example restores the default settings of the EGA registers:

```

mov ah,0f6h ; F6 = revert to default registers
int 10h     ; Call the interrupt

```

FUNCTION F7: DEFINE DEFAULT REGISTER TABLE

Function F7 defines a table that contains default values for any pointer/data chip or single register. If you define default values for a pointer/data chip, you must define them for all registers within that chip.

WARNING: Function F7 sets the default values for all registers within a chip. You must know what to set in all affected registers to prevent unwanted results. Some combinations of register settings might cause physical damage to the EGA adapter or the monitor.

Call with

AH = F7h

CX = VGA Color Select Flag:
 5448h: Allows the EGA Register Interface to recognize
 byte offset 14h of the table pointed to by ES:BX as
 the value for the VGA color select register.

DX = Port number:
 Pointer/data chips
 00h: CRT Controller (3B4h for monochrome modes;
 3D4h for color modes)
 08h: Sequencer (3C4h)
 10h: Graphics Controller (3CEh)
 18h: Attribute Controller (3C0h)
 Single registers
 20h: Miscellaneous Output register (3C2h)
 28h: Feature Control register (3B4h for monochrome
 modes; 3D4h for color modes)
 30h: Graphics 1 Position register (3CCh)
 38h: Graphics 2 Position register (3CAh)

ES:BX = Points to a table of 1-byte entries. Each entry contains the default value for the corresponding register. The table must contain entries for all registers.

Returns

AX: Restored

BX: Not restored

DX: Not restored

ES: Restored

All other registers restored

Examples The following example defines default values for the Attribute Controller:

```

attrdflt db 00h, 01h, 02h, 03h, 04h, 05h, 06h, 07h
          db 10h, 11h, 12h, 13h, 14h, 15h, 16h, 17h
          db 08h, 00h, 0fh, 00h, 00h

mov ax,ds          ; Assume attrdflt in
                  ; data segment
mov es,ax          ; ES = data segment
mov bx,offset attrdflt ; ES:BX = attrdflt
                  ; address
mov ah,0f7h        ; F7 = define default
                  ; register table
xor cx,cx          ; No VGA color select register
mov dx,0018h       ; DX = attribute
                  ; controller
int 10h           ; Call the interrupt

```

The following example defines a default value for the Feature Control register:

```

featdflt db 00h

mov ax,ds          ; Assume featdflt in
                  ; data segment
mov es,ax          ; ES = data segment
mov bx,offset featdflt ; ES:BX = featdflt
                  ; address
mov ah,0f7h        ; F7 = define default
                  ; register table
mov dx,0028h       ; DX = feature control
                  ; register
int 10h           ; Call the interrupt

```

FUNCTION FA: INTERROGATE DRIVER

Function FA interrogates the mouse driver and returns a value that indicates whether the mouse driver is present.

Call with AH = FAh
 BX = 0

Returns

AX = Restored
 BX = 0 if mouse driver is not present
 ES:BX = Points to EGA Register Interface version number, if present:
 Byte 0: Major release number
 Byte 1: Minor release number (in 1/100ths)

Example The following example interrogates the mouse driver and displays the result:

```

gotmsg db "EGA Register Interface found", 0dh, 0ah, "$"
nopmsg db "EGA Register Interface not found", 0dh, 0ah, "$"
revmsg db "Revision $"
crif db 0dh, 0ah, "$"

ten db 10

xor bx,bx ; Must be 0 for this call
mov ah,0fah ; FA = interrogate driver
int 10h ; Interrogate!
or bx,bx ; BX = 0 ?
jnz found ; Branch if driver present
mov dx,offset nopmsg ; Assume nopmsg in data
; segment
mov ah,09h ; 9 = print string
int 21h ; Output not found message
jmp continue ; That's all for now

found: mov dx,offset gotmsg ; Assume gotmsg in data
; segment
mov ah,09h ; 9 = print string
int 21h ; Output found message
mov dx,offset revmsg ; Assume revmsg in data
; segment

mov ah,09h ; 9 = print string
int 21h ; Output "revision"
mov dl,es:[bx] ; DL = major release number
add dl,"0" ; Convert to ASCII
mov ah,2 ; 2 = display character
int 21h ; Output major release
; number
mov dl, "." ; DL = "."
mov ah,2 ; 2 = display character
int 21h ; Output a period

```

(continued)

```

mov al,es:[bx + 1] ; AL = minor release number
xor ah,ah          ; AH = 0
idiv ten          ; AL = 10ths, AH = 100ths
mov bx,ax         ; Save AX in BX
mov dl,al         ; DL = 10ths
add dl,"0"       ; Convert to ASCII
mov ah,2         ; 2 = display character
int 21h         ; Output minor release 10ths
mov dl,bh        ; DL = 100ths
add dl,"0"       ; Convert to ASCII
mov ah,2         ; 2 = display character
int 21h         ; Output minor release
                 ; 100ths
mov dx,offset crlf ; Assume crlf in data
                 ; segment
mov ah,09h       ; 9 = print string
int 21h         ; Output end of line
continue:       ; The end

```


PART IV

Appendixes

Appendix A: ASCII Character Set

Appendix B: Domestic Mouse-Driver Messages

Appendix C: Mouse Menu Messages

**Appendix D: Linking Existing Mouse Programs with
MOUSE.LIB**

**Appendix E: Making Calls from Borland Turbo
Pascal Programs**

**Appendix F: Using the Mouse with the Hercules
Graphics Card**

Appendix A

ASCII Character Set

This appendix provides tables for the ASCII standard character set, the IBM extended character set, and the line-drawing characters in the extended character set. In addition, the section at the end of this appendix discusses how you can use ASCII characters and extended-keyboard scan codes with the TYPE statement.

ASCII TABLES

Figures A-1 and A-2 show all 256 characters of the IBM extended character set supported by most computers that run MS-DOS. The figures show the characters in four columns; each character is followed by its corresponding code in decimal and hexadecimal notation. Many compatible printers print the full character set; if you're not sure about your printer, check its manual.

The ASCII Standard Character Set

Figure A-1 shows the first 128 characters (codes 0 through 127) of the ASCII standard character set.

ASCII	Dec	Hex	ASCII	Dec	Hex	ASCII	Dec	Hex	ASCII	Dec	Hex
	0	00	<space>	32	20	@	64	40	'	96	60
☺	1	01	!	33	21	A	65	41	a	97	61
☹	2	02	"	34	22	B	66	42	b	98	62
♥	3	03	#	35	23	C	67	43	c	99	63
♦	4	04	\$	36	24	D	68	44	d	100	64
♣	5	05	%	37	25	E	69	45	e	101	65
♠	6	06	&	38	26	F	70	46	f	102	66
•	7	07	'	39	27	G	71	47	g	103	67
■	8	08	(	40	28	H	72	48	h	104	68
○	9	09	)	41	29	I	73	49	i	105	69
◼	10	0A	*	42	2A	J	74	4A	j	106	6A
♀	11	0B	+	43	2B	K	75	4B	k	107	6B
♂	12	0C	,	44	2C	L	76	4C	l	108	6C
♪	13	0D	-	45	2D	M	77	4D	m	109	6D
♫	14	0E	.	46	2E	N	78	4E	n	110	6E
✳	15	0F	/	47	2F	O	79	4F	o	111	6F
▶	16	10	0	48	30	P	80	50	p	112	70
◀	17	11	1	49	31	Q	81	51	q	113	71
↑	18	12	2	50	32	R	82	52	r	114	72
!!	19	13	3	51	33	S	83	53	s	115	73
¶	20	14	4	52	34	T	84	54	t	116	74
§	21	15	5	53	35	U	85	55	u	117	75
▬	22	16	6	54	36	V	86	56	v	118	76
↑	23	17	7	55	37	W	87	57	w	119	77
↑	24	18	8	56	38	X	88	58	x	120	78
↓	25	19	9	57	39	Y	89	59	y	121	79
→	26	1A	:	58	3A	Z	90	5A	z	122	7A
←	27	1B	;	59	3B	[	91	5B	{	123	7B
┌	28	1C	<	60	3C	\	92	5C	|	124	7C
↔	29	1D	=	61	3D	]	93	5D	}	125	7D
▲	30	1E	>	62	3E	^	94	5E	~	126	7E
▼	31	1F	?	63	3F	_	95	5F	△	127	7F

Figure A-1. The ASCII standard character set.

The IBM Extended Character Set

Figure A-2 shows the IBM extended character set (codes 128 through 255).

ASCII	Dec	Hex	ASCII	Dec	Hex	ASCII	Dec	Hex	ASCII	Dec	Hex
Ç	128	80	á	160	A0	Ł	192	C0	α	224	E0
ü	129	81	í	161	A1	ł	193	C1	β	225	E1
é	130	82	ó	162	A2	Ť	194	C2	Γ	226	E2
â	131	83	ú	163	A3	†	195	C3	Π	227	E3
ä	132	84	ñ	164	A4	—	196	C4	Σ	228	E4
à	133	85	Ñ	165	A5	‡	197	C5	σ	229	E5
â	134	86	ª	166	A6	‡	198	C6	μ	230	E6
ç	135	87	º	167	A7	‡	199	C7	τ	231	E7
ê	136	88	¿	168	A8	‡	200	C8	Φ	232	E8
ë	137	89	┌	169	A9	┌	201	C9	Θ	233	E9
è	138	8A	┐	170	AA	┐	202	CA	Ω	234	EA
ï	139	8B	½	171	AB	┐	203	CB	δ	235	EB
î	140	8C	¼	172	AC	┐	204	CC	ε	236	EC
ì	141	8D	¡	173	AD	=	205	CD	φ	237	ED
Ä	142	8E	«	174	AE	≡	206	CE	ε	238	EE
Å	143	8F	»	175	AF	≡	207	CF	∩	239	EF
É	144	90	■	176	B0	≡	208	DF	≡	240	F0
æ	145	91	■	177	B1	≡	209	D1	≡	241	F1
Æ	146	92	■	178	B2	≡	210	D2	≡	242	F2
ô	147	93	■	179	B3	≡	211	D3	≡	243	F3
ö	148	94	■	180	B4	≡	212	D4	≡	244	F4
ò	149	95	■	181	B5	≡	213	D5	≡	245	F5
û	150	96	■	182	B6	≡	214	D6	≡	246	F6
ù	151	97	■	183	B7	≡	215	D7	≡	247	F7
ÿ	152	98	■	184	B8	≡	216	D8	≡	248	F8
ö	153	99	■	185	B9	≡	217	D9	≡	249	F9
Û	154	9A	■	186	BA	≡	218	DA	≡	250	FA
φ	155	9B	■	187	BB	≡	219	DB	≡	251	FB
£	156	9C	■	188	BC	≡	220	DC	≡	252	FC
¥	157	9D	■	189	BD	≡	221	DD	≡	253	FD
₤	158	9E	■	190	BE	≡	222	DE	≡	254	FE
f	159	9F	■	191	BF	≡	223	DF	≡	255	FF

Figure A-2. The IBM extended character set.

Line-drawing Characters

Figure A-3 shows the four sets of line-drawing characters in the IBM extended character set.

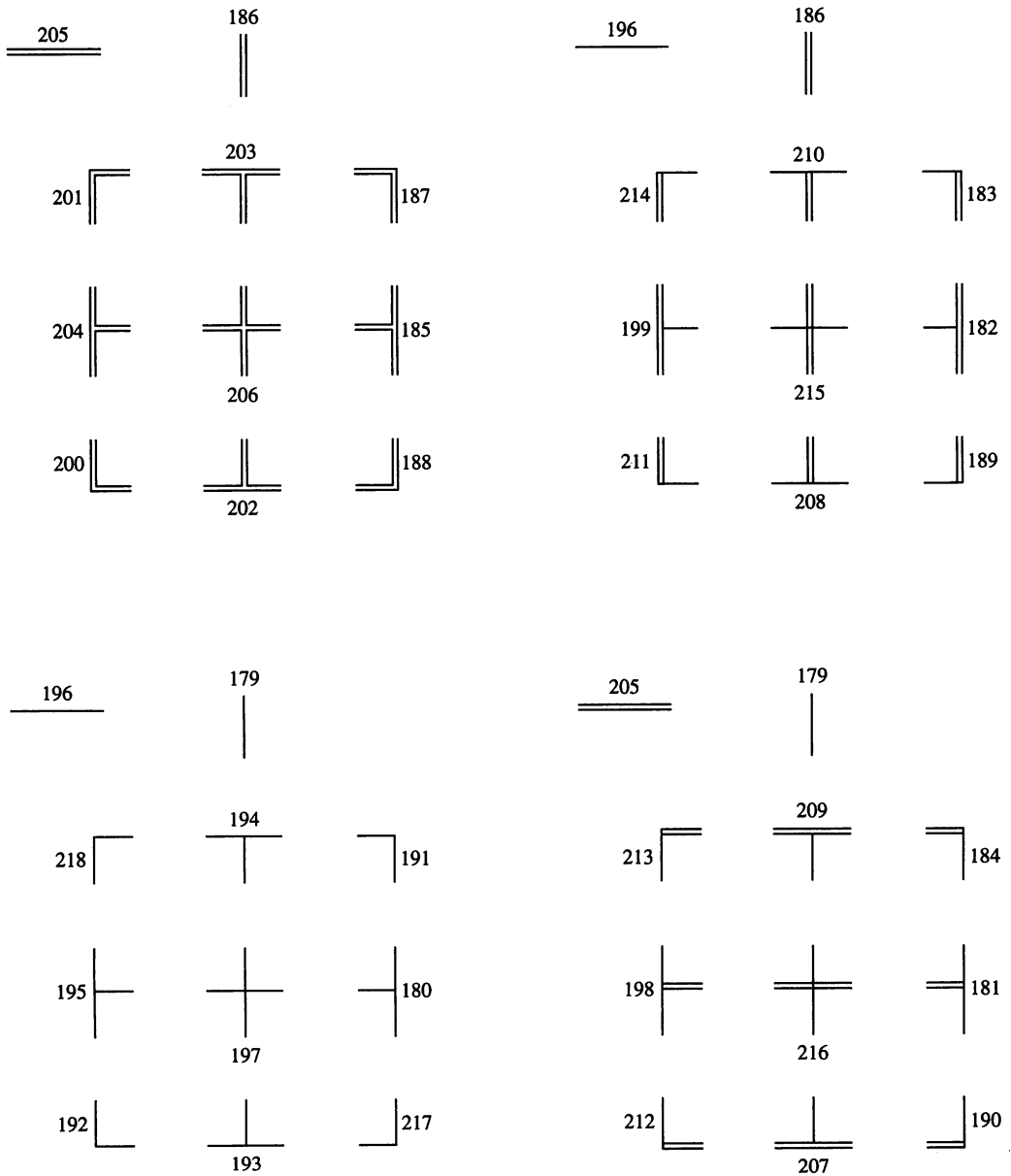


Figure A-3. Line-drawing characters in the IBM extended character set.

USING THE TYPE STATEMENT

The following table lists key sequences that can and cannot be simulated by using the TYPE statement.

NOTE: The output characteristics listed for particular key functions are for mouse menus running at the MS-DOS level. Therefore, standard applications might not interpret all keyboard operations in the same way. Applications that reprogram or directly access the keyboard, or applications that bypass the MS-DOS system facilities for keyboard input might not function correctly with mouse menus.

Key	Scan Code		ASCII or Extended†			ASCII or Extended† with Shift			ASCII or Extended† with Ctrl			ASCII or Extended† with Alt		
	Dec	Hex	Dec	Hex	Char	Dec	Hex	Char	Dec	Hex	Char	Dec	Hex	Char
Esc	1	1	27	1B	ESC	27	1B		27	1B		suppressed		
1 |	2	2	49	31	1	33	21	|	suppressed			120	78	NUL
2 @	3	3	50	32	2	64	40	@	3	3	NUL	121	79	NUL
3 #	4	4	51	33	3	35	23	#	suppressed			122	7A	NUL
4 \$	5	5	52	34	4	36	24	\$	suppressed			123	7B	NUL
5 %	6	6	53	35	5	37	25	%	suppressed			124	7C	NUL
6 ^	7	7	54	36	6	94	5E	^	30	1E		125	7D	NUL
7 &	8	8	55	37	7	38	26	&	suppressed			126	7E	NUL
8 *	9	9	56	38	8	42	2A	*	suppressed			127	7F	NUL
9 (	10	0A	57	39	9	40	28	(	suppressed			128	80	NUL
0)	11	0B	48	30	0	41	29	)	suppressed			129	81	NUL
- _	12	0C	45	2D	-	95	5F	-	31	1F		130	82	NUL
= +	13	0D	61	3D	=	43	2B	+	suppressed			131	83	NUL
Backspace	14	0E	8	8	bksp	8	8		127	7F		suppressed		
Tab	15	0F	9	9	tab	15	0F	NUL	suppressed			suppressed		
Q	16	10	113	71	q	81	51	Q	17	11		16	10	NUL
W	17	11	119	77	w	87	57	W	23	17		17	11	NUL
E	18	12	101	65	e	69	45	E	5	5		18	12	NUL
R	19	13	114	72	r	82	52	R	18	12		19	13	NUL
T	20	14	116	74	t	84	54	T	20	14		20	14	NUL
Y	21	15	121	79	y	89	59	Y	25	19		21	15	NUL
U	22	16	117	75	u	85	55	U	21	15		22	16	NUL
I	23	17	105	69	i	73	49	I	9	9		23	17	NUL
O	24	18	111	6F	o	79	4F	O	15	0F		24	18	NUL
P	25	19	112	70	p	80	50	P	16	10		25	19	NUL
[{	26	1A	91	5B	[	123	7B	{	27	1B		suppressed		
] }	27	1B	93	5D	]	125	7D	}	29	1D		suppressed		
Enter	28	1C	13	0D	CR	13	0D	CR	10	0A	LF	suppressed		
Ctrl	29	1D	suppressed			suppressed			suppressed			suppressed		
A	30	1E	97	61	a	65	41	A	1	1		30	1E	NUL
S	31	1F	115	73	s	83	53	S	19	13		31	1F	NUL
D	32	20	100	64	d	68	44	D	4	4		32	20	NUL
F	33	21	102	66	f	70	46	F	6	6		33	21	NUL
G	34	22	103	67	g	71	47	G	7	7		34	22	NUL
H	35	23	104	68	h	72	48	H	8	8		35	23	NUL
J	36	24	106	6A	j	74	4A	J	10	0A		36	24	NUL
K	37	25	107	6B	k	75	4B	K	11	0B		37	25	NUL

(continued)

Figure A-4. Key sequences that can and cannot be simulated by using the TYPE statement.

PART IV: APPENDIXES

Key	Scan Code		ASCII or Extended†			ASCII or Extended† with Shift			ASCII or Extended† with Ctrl			ASCII or Extended† with Alt		
	Dec	Hex	Dec	Hex	Char	Dec	Hex	Char	Dec	Hex	Char	Dec	Hex	Char
L	38	26	108	6C	l	76	4C	L	12	0C		38	26	NUL
; :	39	27	59	3B	;	58	3A	:	suppressed			suppressed		
' "	40	28	39	27	'	34	22	"	suppressed			suppressed		
` ~	41	29	96	60	`	126	7E	~	suppressed			suppressed		
Left Shift	42	2A	suppressed			suppressed			suppressed			suppressed		
\ |	43	2B	92	5C	\	124	7C	|	28	1C		suppressed		
Z	44	2C	122	7A	z	90	5A	Z	26	1A		44	2C	NUL
X	45	2D	120	78	x	88	58	X	24	18		45	2D	NUL
C	46	2E	99	63	c	67	43	C	3	3		46	2E	NUL
V	47	2F	118	76	v	86	56	V	22	16		47	2F	NUL
B	48	30	98	62	b	66	42	B	2	2		48	30	NUL
N	49	31	110	6E	n	78	4E	N	14	0E		49	31	NUL
M	50	32	109	6D	m	77	4D	M	13	0D		50	32	NUL
, <	51	33	44	2C	,	60	3C	<	suppressed			suppressed		
. >	52	34	46	2E	.	62	3E	>	suppressed			suppressed		
/ ?	53	35	47	2F	/	63	3F	?	suppressed			suppressed		
Right Shift	54	36	suppressed			suppressed			suppressed			suppressed		
* PrtSc	55	37	42	2A	*	INT 5††			16	10		suppressed		
Alt	56	38	suppressed			suppressed			suppressed			suppressed		
Spacebar	57	39	32	20	space	32	20	space	32	20	space	32	20	space
Caps Lock	58	3A	suppressed			suppressed			suppressed			suppressed		
F1	59	3B	59	3B	NUL	84	54	NUL	94	5E	NUL	104	68	NUL
F2	60	3C	60	3C	NUL	85	55	NUL	95	5F	NUL	105	69	NUL
F3	61	3D	61	3D	NUL	86	56	NUL	96	60	NUL	106	6A	NUL
F4	62	3E	62	3E	NUL	87	57	NUL	97	61	NUL	107	6B	NUL
F5	63	3F	63	3F	NUL	88	58	NUL	98	62	NUL	108	6C	NUL
F6	64	40	64	40	NUL	89	59	NUL	99	63	NUL	109	6D	NUL
F7	65	41	65	41	NUL	90	5A	NUL	100	64	NUL	110	6E	NUL
F8	66	42	66	42	NUL	91	5B	NUL	101	65	NUL	111	6F	NUL
F9	67	43	67	43	NUL	92	5C	NUL	102	66	NUL	112	70	NUL
F10	68	44	68	44	NUL	93	5D	NUL	103	67	NUL	113	71	NUL
F11	217	D9	133	85	NUL	135	87	NUL	137	89	NUL	139	8B	NUL
F12	218	DA	134	86	NUL	136	88	NUL	138	8A	NUL	140	8C	NUL
Num Lock	69	45	suppressed			suppressed			suppressed			suppressed		
Scroll Lock	70	46	suppressed			suppressed			suppressed			suppressed		
Home	71	47	71	47	NUL	55	37	7	119	77	NUL	suppressed		
Up Arrow	72	48	72	48	NUL	56	38	8	suppressed			suppressed		
Page Up	73	49	73	49	NUL	57	39	9	132	84	NUL	suppressed		
Gray -	74	4A	45	2D	-	45	2D	-	suppressed			suppressed		
Left Arrow	75	4B	75	4B	NUL	52	34	4	115	73	NUL	suppressed		
Numpad 5	76	4C	53	35	5	suppressed			suppressed			suppressed		
Right Arrow	77	4D	77	4D	NUL	54	36	6	116	74	NUL	suppressed		
Gray +	78	4E	43	2B	+	43	2B	+	suppressed			suppressed		
End	79	4F	79	4F	NUL	49	31	1	117	75	NUL	suppressed		
Down Arrow	80	50	80	50	NUL	50	32	2	suppressed			suppressed		
Page Down	81	51	81	51	NUL	51	33	3	118	76	NUL	suppressed		
Insert	82	52	82	52	NUL	48	30	0	suppressed			suppressed		
Delete	83	53	83	53	NUL	46	2E	.	suppressed			suppressed		

† Extended codes return NUL (ASCII 0) as the initial character.

This is a signal that a second (extended) code is available in the keystroke buffer.

†† Under DOS, Shift PrtSc causes interrupt 5, which prints the screen unless an interrupt handler has been defined to replace the default interrupt 5 handler.

Appendix B

Domestic Mouse-Driver Messages

This appendix lists the messages that the domestic mouse driver might display. It also describes possible causes of the messages and the actions you can take in response to them.

Invalid parameter

You typed an invalid parameter in a command-line switch. For more information about command-line switches, see your Microsoft mouse documentation.

Driver not installed--Internal Error 1

Insufficient space was found to load the interrupt service routine. If you receive this message, please call Microsoft Product Support Services.

Driver not installed--Microsoft Mouse not found

The mouse hardware was not found on the system in which the mouse driver attempted to install itself. A hardware component in your computer might be defective.

Driver not installed--interrupt jumper missing

A jumper on the bus card of a bus or InPort mouse is missing. You need to verify that the jumper has been installed. You might also need to select another interrupt position.

Driver not installed--multiple interrupt jumpers found

The mouse driver detected multiple interrupt jumpers on an InPort mouse. You need to verify that only one jumper block is present on the interrupt select jumper.

MSX Mouse driver installed

The driver for an MSX mouse on an MSX system was installed. No action is required.

Mouse driver installed

The installation of the mouse driver was successful. No action is required.

Switch values passed to existing mouse driver

Command-line switch values were passed to the existing driver when you reran MOUSE.COM from the MS-DOS prompt. No action is required.

Existing mouse driver enabled

The previously loaded mouse driver was enabled when you reran MOUSE.COM from the command line while a mouse driver was present. No action is required.

Existing mouse driver removed from memory

An existing mouse driver was removed from memory. No action is required.

Existing mouse driver disabled

An existing mouse driver was disabled, but the driver was not unloaded from memory. No action is required.

Mouse driver not installed

You used the *mouse off* command line, but no mouse driver was installed.

Mouse driver installed, cannot change port
(/i , /c , and /b invalid)

The mouse driver was successfully installed to use either an InPort port, a serial port, or a bus port. Once the driver has been successfully installed, you can't use the command-line switch to change the port.

Mouse driver already installed

You are trying to install another copy of MOUSE.SYS on top of an existing one. Check your CONFIG.SYS file and modify it to load only one copy of the driver.

Unable to disable Mouse driver--Control Panel is active

You can't disable the mouse driver when the control panel is active. Disable the control panel by entering **cpanel off** with the appropriate pathname at the MS-DOS prompt. You can now unload the mouse driver.

Unable to disable Mouse driver--Mouse Menu is active

You can't unload the mouse driver while a mouse menu is active in the system. Type **menu off** to disable the mouse menu.

Appendix C

Mouse Menu Messages

This appendix lists the messages that the MENU program and the MAKEMENU utility might display, along with descriptions of possible causes and the actions you can take in response to them.

nnnn error(s) detected

This message indicates how many errors MAKEMENU detected while attempting to process the DEF file.

nnnn symbol(s) used

After successfully converting the DEF file, MAKEMENU presents this message telling you how many symbols were used in the DEF file.

xxxxxx before BEGIN

The first statement in your DEF file must be a BEGIN statement. Correct the DEF file and run MAKEMENU again.

Cannot use system reserved label: *xxxxxx*

One of the labels in the DEF file is reserved for use by MAKEMENU. Change each occurrence of the specified label in the DEF file and run MAKEMENU again.

Cannot use system reserved parameter: *xxxxxx*

One of the parameters in the DEF file is reserved for use by MAKEMENU. Change each occurrence of the specified parameter in the DEF file and run MAKEMENU again.

Close quote missing

A statement in the DEF file contained an item that did not include a closing quotation mark. Correct the DEF file and run MAKEMENU again.

Conversion completed

The MAKEMENU utility has finished creating a loadable menu file. No action is required. The MS-DOS system prompt appears after MAKEMENU displays this message.

Error--Invalid statement: xxxxxx

The statement didn't have a label, the statement's label didn't end with a colon (:), the statement had an invalid parameter, or a syntax error occurred. Be sure that all statements (except the BEGIN statement and statements within menu and pop-up subroutines) are labeled. Also, be sure that each label is followed by a colon. Check the statement syntax for correct use of commas and spaces.

Error--Label previously used: xxxxxx

The same label was used to name more than one statement. Be sure that the labels are unique for each statement.

Error--Label not found: xxxxxx

A label specified for a parameter did not exist. Be sure that the statements have labels and that the labels are correct.

Extra colon after label: xxxxxx

MAKEMENU detected an extra colon after one of the labels. You can use only one colon after a label. Correct the DEF file and run MAKEMENU again.

Illegal function call at address *nnnn*

A TYPE or an EXECUTE statement had too many parameters, a SELECT statement defined the item selection area outside the menu, or the quotation marks in a SELECT or an OPTION statement were placed incorrectly. Use the correct number of parameters, redefine the item selection area, or ensure that double quotation marks are used correctly to designate text strings.

Invalid statement

MAKEMENU detected an invalid statement in the DEF file. Correct the DEF file and run MAKEMENU again.

Keyboard emulation off

The mouse menu program is no longer running. No action is required.

Keyboard emulation on

The mouse menu program is running. No action is required.

xxxxxx--Label pointer not found

One of the statement parameters referred to a label that did not exist in the file. Correct the DEF file and run MAKEMENU again.

Label previously used

You used the same label twice in the same program. Correct the DEF file and run MAKEMENU again.

Menu installed

You started up a mouse menu program, and it is running. No action is required. Use the mouse menu as usual.

Must run under DOS 2.0 or later

You cannot use MAKEMENU with a version of MS-DOS earlier than 2.0.

Name of file to convert:

You typed **makemenu** to create a loadable mouse menu file. Type a mouse menu filename without the DEF extension.

OPTION statement before MENU statement

You can use OPTION statements only within a MENU/MEND subroutine. Correct the DEF file and run MAKEMENU again.

Program too large

The size of the mouse menu DEF file will cause the resulting MNU file to be larger than the maximum size of 57 KB. Reduce the size of the DEF file.

Too many symbols (user-defined labels)

Your DEF file used more than 967 symbols. (MAKEMENU allows 1,000 symbols. However, MAKEMENU uses 33, so only 967 are available to the user.) Correct the DEF file and run MAKEMENU again.

Linking Existing Mouse Programs with MOUSE.LIB

If you have a high-level language program that links with an earlier version of the Microsoft mouse library, you might need to modify the program to link it with the new MOUSE.LIB library on the disks that come with this book.

The new MOUSE.LIB library works in the same way as did previous mouse libraries except that the new library has the following new features:

- New mouse Functions 24–52.
- You must pass the fourth parameter (*M4%*) of mouse Function 9 by reference instead of by value.
- Mouse Function 16 requires four parameters instead of five.

If your program doesn't call Functions 9 or 16, you can link it with the new MOUSE.LIB library without modification.

If your program calls Functions 9 or 16, you must modify the program so that it conforms to the new interface definitions before you can link it with the new MOUSE.LIB.

Appendix E

Making Calls from Borland Turbo Pascal Programs

To call mouse functions from a program in Borland Turbo Pascal, use the following procedure, which passes the correct parameters to the mouse driver. Include this procedure in your code, and then call the mouse functions by passing values into this procedure. Be sure to specify the DOS unit in the *uses* clause. Pass the offset of the subroutine or buffer in *m4* and the segment of the subroutine or buffer in *m5*. See comments in code for more detail.

```
Procedure Mouse ( Var m1, m2, m3, m4, m5 : integer );  
  
Var  
  CpuReg: Registers;           {Be sure to include 'uses DOS'}  
  
begin {mouse}  
  
  if m1 >= 0 then  
  begin  
    CpuReg.AX := m1;           {Load parameters }  
    CpuReg.BX := m2;           {into appropriate }  
    CpuReg.CX := m3;           {registers      }  
  end  
end
```

(continued)

continued

```

if (m1 = 9) or (m1 = 12) or (m1 = 20)
  or (m1 = 22) or (m1 = 23) or (m1 = 24)
  or (m1 = 51) then
  begin
    CpuReg.DX := m4;      {m4 = offset of }
                          {the user array }
                          {or subroutine }

    CpuReg.ES := m5;      {m5 = segment of }
    end;                  {the user array }
                          {or subroutine }

  else if (m1 = 16) then
    begin
      CpuReg.CX := m2;      {Left x-coordinate }
      CpuReg.DX := m3;      {Upper y-coordinate }
      CpuReg.SI := m4;      {Right x-coordinate }
      CpuReg.DI := m5;      {Lower y-coordinate }
    end;

  else if (m1 = 43) then
    begin
      CpuReg.SI := m4;      {m4 = offset of the }
                          {curve data buffer }
      CpuReg.ES := m5;      {m5 = segment of the }
                          {curve data buffer }
    end;

  else
    CpuReg.DX := m4;

  intr ($33, CpuReg);      {Call mouse driver }
                          {at Interrupt 33H }

  m1 := CpuReg.AX;        {Return values back}
  m2 := CpuReg.BX;        {to parameters }
  m3 := CpuReg.CX;
  m4 := CpuReg.DX;

  {Special returns }
  if (m1 = 20) or (m1 = 41) then
    begin
      m2 := CpuReg.ES;
    end;
  else if (m1 = 31)
    begin
      m3 := CpuReg.ES;
    end;

```

(continued)

```
    else if (m1 = 44) or (m1 = 45) then
    begin
        m3 := CpuReg.ES;
        m4 := CpuReg.SI;
    end;

end;

end; {mouse}
```


Appendix F

Using the Mouse with the Hercules Graphics Card

Before you use the Hercules Monochrome Graphics Card with a program that has built-in mouse support, you must do the following:

1. Set the Hercules card to graphics mode. (If necessary, see the documentation that came with your Hercules card.)
2. If the Hercules card is using CRT page 0, store a 6 in memory location 40H:49H. If the Hercules card is using CRT page 1, store a 5 in memory location 40H:49H.
3. Call mouse Function 0 to set the cursor boundaries and CRT page number to the appropriate values.

If you are using Microsoft C and MSHERC.COM or Microsoft QuickBasic and QBHERC.COM, you should follow the steps in this order:

1. If the Hercules card is using CRT page 0, store a 6 in memory location 40H:49H. If the Hercules card is using CRT page 1, store a 5 in memory location 40H:49H.
2. Call mouse Function 0 to set the cursor boundaries and CRT page number to the appropriate values.
3. Set the Hercules card to graphics mode. (If necessary, see the documentation that came with your Hercules card.)



Index

Note: Italicized page numbers refer to entries in programs or figures.

Special Characters

" 30, 49
% 98
, 49
... 49
3270 graphics adapter 81, 82
: 49
[] 49

A

ABSOLUTE.BAS program 229–31
ABSOLUTE subprogram 224, 225
acceleration curves 112, 203–8
action commands 39–40
 EXECUTE 28, 41
 NOTHING 28, 43
 TYPE 28, 41–43
adapters. *See* video adapters
ANSI.SYS file 263
application programs
 sample mouse menus for 72, 76
 using mouse menus with 48
ASCII character set 299–304
ASCII text files 46
ASMEXAMP.ASM program 253–56
assembly language. *See* MASM programs
ASSIGN command 27, 33
ASSIGN statement 39, 40, 50–51
ATEST.ASM program 252–53
Attribute Controller registers 281
attribute parameters 30–31
 for MATCH statement 55
 for MENU statement 58
 for POP-UP statement 62
 specifying colors with 31–32
AUTOEXEC.BAT file 22

B

BallPoint mouse
 buttons on 19–20
 development of 12–13
 driver for 13
 functions for 113
 Set/Get BallPoint Information
 function 113, 209–11

Basic. *See* interpreted Basic programs; QuickBasic programs
BATEST.BAS program 221–24
BEGIN command 27, 33
BEGIN statement 33, 39, 40, 51–53
Borland Turbo Pascal, calling
 mouse functions from 315–16
brackets ([]) 49
buffer pointers, passing
 in C/QuickC 102
 in MASM programs 102
bus mouse 6, 8, 10
button status, determining 96, 112, 128–30, 132–36

C

CALL ABSOLUTE command 225, 226, 229–31
calling mouse functions 22, 97–102, 217–18
CALL INTERRUPT command 225, 226, 232, 235
call masks 114–15
CALL MOUSE command 225, 226, 232–35
CALL statement 219–20
Cameron, Bridget 13
case in program statements 28
CGA display adapters 81
C language. *See* C/QuickC programs
CMOUSE.C program 242–43
colon (:) 49
COLOR.DEF mouse menu
 program 73
color menus 31–32
comma (,) 49
commands. *See* mouse menu commands
comments in statements 32
COMPASS utility 13, 20
Conditional Off function 111, 159–60, 263
CONFIG.SYS file 22, 263
coordinates, virtual-screen vs.
 physical-screen 85, 87
C programs. *See* C/QuickC programs
C/QuickC programs
 calling conventions for 22, 97, 98, 100, 101
C/QuickC programs, *continued*
 calling EGA.LIB library from 277
 calling mouse functions from
 Conditional Off 160
 Disable Mouse Driver 187
 Enable Mouse Driver 188
 Enumerate Video Modes 201
 Get Active Advanced
 Functions 213
 Get Button Press Information 134
 Get Button Release
 Information 136
 Get Button Status and Mouse
 Position 129–30
 Get CRT Page Number 185
 Get Cursor Hot Spot 202
 Get Driver Version, Mouse
 Type, and IRQ Number 194
 Get General Driver
 Information 196
 Get Language Number 192
 Get Maximum Virtual
 Coordinates 197
 Get Minimum/Maximum
 Virtual Coordinates 212
 Get Mouse Driver State
 Storage Requirements 169
 Get MOUSE.INI 216
 Get Mouse Sensitivity 182
 Get Screen/Cursor Masks and
 Mickey Counts 198
 Get Switch Settings 215
 Get User Alternate Interrupt
 Address 179
 Hide Cursor 128
 Light-Pen Emulation Mode Off 157
 Light-Pen Emulation Mode On 156
 Load Acceleration Curves 205
 Mouse Hardware Reset 209
 Mouse Reset and Status 125
 Read Acceleration Curves 206
 Read Mouse Motion Counters 148
 Restore Mouse Driver State 171
 Save Mouse Driver State 170
 Set Alternate Subroutine Call
 Mask/Address 176–77
 Set CRT Page Number 184

- C/QuickC programs, *continued*
 Set Double-Speed Threshold 162
 Set/Get Active Acceleration Curve 210
 Set/Get BallPoint Information 210
 Set Graphics Cursor Block 143–44
 Set Interrupt Subroutine Call Mask/Address 153–54
 Set Language for Messages 192
 Set Mickey/Pixel Ratio 158
 Set Minimum/Maximum Horizontal Cursor Position 138
 Set Minimum/Maximum Vertical Cursor Position 140
 Set Mouse Cursor Position 132
 Set Mouse Interrupt Rate 183
 Set Mouse Sensitivity 180
 Set Text Cursor 147
 Set Video Mode 200
 Show Cursor 126
 Software Reset 189
 Swap Interrupt Subroutines 167
 changing video modes from 86–87
 CMOUSE.C program 242–43
 CTEST.C program 243
 LPEN.C program 243–45
 M20SUB.ASM program 249–50
 MOUH_INT.C program 245–46
 MOUH_LIB.C program 245–46
 MOUS_INT.C program 245–46
 MOUS_LIB.C program 245–46
 MSCEXAMP.C program 246–48
 parameter notation in 98
 passing buffer pointers in 102
 PENCIL.C program 249
 SETVID.C program 83–84
 for using mouse 242–50
 verifying mouse installation from 105
 verifying video modes from 83–84
 CRT page numbers 114, 184–85
 CTEST.C program 243
 cursor
 graphics 89–93, 140–45
 hot spot 92–93, 96, 201–3
 internal flags for 95–96
 list of functions for 111–12, 119–20
 showing/hiding 96, 111, 114, 125–28
 text 89, 93–95, 145–47
 types 89
 cursor mask vs. screen mask
 for graphics cursor 90–93
 for software text cursor 93–95
- D**
 DEF files 45, 72–76
 Define Default Register Table function 292–93
 demonstration mouse menu programs 72–76
 Disable Mouse Driver function 186–87
 disks (with book)
 adapting programs on 46
 libraries on 22, 273, 313
 list of sample mouse programming interface programs 218–19
 sample mouse menu programs 72–76
 displays. *See* video displays
 DOSOVERLY mouse menu program 70–72
 driver. *See* mouse driver
 DROP.DEF mouse menu program 73–74
- E**
 EGA display adapter 23, 81, 82
 EGA.LIB library 273–74
 calling, from C/QuickC programs 277
 calling, from FORTRAN programs 278–80
 calling, from high-level language programs 275–76
 calling, from MASM programs 274–75
 calling, from Pascal programs 280–81
 calling, from QuickBasic programs 276–77
 calling, ROM BIOS video routines when using 281–82
 functions in 283–95
 EGA Register Interface Function F0 283–84
 EGA Register Interface Function F1 285–86
 EGA Register Interface Function F2 286–87
 EGA Register Interface Function F3 287–88
 EGA Register Interface Function F4 288–89
- EGA Register Interface Function F5 290–91
 EGA Register Interface Function F6 291
 EGA Register Interface Function F7 292–93
 EGA Register Interface Function FA 293–95
 EGA register interface functions 283–95
 ellipsis (...) 49
 Enable Mouse Driver function 187–88
 Engelbart, Doug 3–4
 Enumerate Video Modes function 114, 117, 200–201
 Ericsson display adapter 83
 EXECUTE1.DEF mouse menu program 74
 EXECUTE2.DEF mouse menu program 74
 EXECUTE command 28, 41
 EXECUTE statement 41, 53–54
- F**
 FDEMO.FOR program 263
 flags, internal 95–96
 FORI.FOR program 261–62
 foreign language support 118, 190–92
 FORTRAN programs 22, 261
 calling EGA.LIB library from 278–80
 FDEMO.FOR program 263
 FORI.FOR program 261–62
 FTEST.FOR program 262–63
 SUBS.ASM program 263
 FTEST.FOR program 262–63
 functions. *See* EGA register interface functions; mouse functions
- G**
 Genius VHR display adapter 82
 Get Active Advanced Functions function 212–13
 Get Button Press Information function 96, 112, 132–34
 Get Button Release Information function 96, 112, 134–36
 Get Button Status and Mouse Position function 97, 112, 128–30
 Get CRT Page Number function 114, 185
 Get Cursor Hot Spot function 96, 201–3

- Get Driver Version, Mouse Type, and IRQ Number function 192–94
 - Get General Driver Information function 194–96
 - Get Language Number function 118, 191–92
 - Get Maximum Virtual Coordinates function 196–97
 - Get Minimum/Maximum Virtual Coordinates function 211–12
 - Get Mouse Driver State Storage Requirements function 168–69
 - Get MOUSE.INI function 215–16
 - Get Mouse Sensitivity function 112, 181–82
 - Get Screen/Cursor Masks and Mickey Counts function 112, 197–98
 - Get Switch Settings function 213–15
 - Get User Alternate Interrupt Address function 115, 177–79
 - Graphics Controller
 - Miscellaneous register 282
 - graphics cursor 89–93, 140–45
 - FORTRAN program for redefining 263
 - hot spot 92–93, 96, 201–3
 - interpreted Basic program for displaying 220–21
 - MASM program for displaying 251–52
 - graphics mode vs. text mode 80, 89
- H**
- hardware text cursor 89, 95, 145–47
 - Hawley, Jack 4
 - Hercules display adapter 82, 245, 264, 317–18
 - Hide Cursor function 96, 111, 114, 127–28
 - HP Vectra display adapter 82
- I**
- \$INCLUDE metacommand 228
 - IBM EGA modes
 - characteristics of 81–82
 - writing mouse programs for 23, 273–95
 - IBM extended character set 301–2
 - IBM XGA video mode 13, 82
 - INITPAS.ASM program 266
 - Input Status registers 282
 - int86x()* function 242, 245
 - internal cursor flags 95–96
 - interpreted Basic programs. *See also* QuickBasic programs
 - BATEST.BAS program 221–24
 - calling conventions for 98, 99
 - calling mouse functions from
 - Conditional Off 159–60
 - Disable Mouse Driver 186
 - Enable Mouse Driver 187
 - Enumerate Video Modes 201
 - Get Active Advanced Functions 212
 - Get Button Press Information 133
 - Get Button Release Information 135
 - Get Button Status and Mouse Position 129
 - Get CRT Page Number 185
 - Get Cursor Hot Spot 202
 - Get Driver Version, Mouse Type, and IRQ Number function 193
 - Get General Driver Information 195
 - Get Language Number 192
 - Get Maximum Virtual Coordinates 197
 - Get Minimum/Maximum Virtual Coordinates 211
 - Get Mouse Driver State Storage Requirements 168
 - Get MOUSE.INI 216
 - Get Mouse Sensitivity 181
 - Get Screen/Cursor Masks and Mickey Counts 198
 - Get Switch Settings 214
 - Get User Alternate Interrupt Address 178
 - Hide Cursor 127
 - Light-Pen Emulation Mode Off 157
 - Light-Pen Emulation Mode On 156
 - Load Acceleration Curves 205
 - Mouse Hardware Reset 209
 - Mouse Reset and Status 125
 - Read Acceleration Curves 206
 - Read Mouse Motion Counters 148
 - Restore Mouse Driver State 171
 - Save Mouse Driver State 169–70
 - Set Alternate Subroutine Call Mask and Address 175
 - Set CRT Page Number 184
 - Set Double-Speed Threshold 161–62
 - interpreted Basic programs, *continued*
 - Set/Get Active Acceleration Curve 210
 - Set/Get BallPoint Information 210
 - Set Graphics Cursor Block 141–42
 - Set Interrupt Subroutine Call Mask and Address 151–52
 - Set Language for Messages 191
 - Set Mickey/Pixel Ratio 158
 - Set Minimum/Maximum Horizontal Cursor Position 137
 - Set Minimum/Maximum Vertical Cursor Position 139
 - Set Mouse Cursor Position 132
 - Set Mouse Interrupt Rate 183
 - Set Mouse Sensitivity 180
 - Set Text Cursor 146
 - Set Video Mode 199
 - Show Cursor 126
 - Software Reset 189
 - Swap Interrupt Subroutines 165–66
 - parameter notation in 98
 - PIANO.BAS program 224
 - setting video mode in 85
 - TSTI.BAS program 220–21
 - for using mouse 219–24
 - verifying mouse installation from 103–4
 - verifying video modes from 85
- Interrogate Driver function 293–95
- Interrupt 10H 86, 281
- Interrupt 33H 18, 22–23, 98, 103, 110, 217
- INTERRUPT.BAS program 232
- interrupt handlers 114–15
 - installing 115–16
 - writing 115–16
- INTERRUPT subprogram 224, 225, 227–29
- IXGA display adapter 81, 82
- K**
- KBD.DEF mouse menu program 75–76
 - keyboard buffer 18–19
 - keyboard mapping 19–20
 - key sequences, simulating 19, 68, 303–4

L

labels for program statements 29, 49
 language support 118, 190–92
 laptops and BallPoint mouse 12–15
 light-pen emulation 116–17, 120, 155–57
 Light-Pen Emulation Mode Off
 function 117, 156–57, 243
 Light-Pen Emulation Mode On
 function 116, 155–56
 line-drawing characters 37, 302
 Load Acceleration Curves
 function 112, 203–5
 lowercase in program statements 28
 LPEN.C program 243–45

M

M20SUB.ASM program 249–50
 MAKEMENU utility 7, 45–47, 309–11
 MASM programs
 ASMEXAMP.ASM program 253–56
 ATEST.ASM program 252–53
 calling conventions for 101, 251
 calling EGA.LIB library from 274–75
 calling mouse functions from
 Conditional Off 160
 Disable Mouse Driver 187
 Enable Mouse Driver 188
 Enumerate Video Modes 201
 Get Active Advanced Functions 213
 Get Button Press Information 134
 Get Button Release Information 136
 Get Button Status and Mouse Position 130
 Get CRT Page Number 185
 Get Cursor Hot Spot 203
 Get Driver Version, Mouse Type, and IRQ Number 194
 Get General Driver Information 196
 Get Language Number 192
 Get Maximum Virtual Coordinates 197
 Get Minimum/Maximum Virtual Coordinates 212
 Get Mouse Driver State Storage Requirements 169
 Get MOUSE.INI 216
 Get Mouse Sensitivity 182

MASM programs, *continued*

 Get Screen/Cursor Masks and Mickey Counts 198
 Get Switch Settings 215
 Get User Alternate Interrupt Address 179
 Hide Cursor 128
 Light-Pen Emulation Mode Off 157
 Light-Pen Emulation Mode On 156
 Load Acceleration Curves 205
 Mouse Hardware Reset 209
 Mouse Reset and Status 125
 Read Acceleration Curves 207
 Read Mouse Motion Counters 148
 Restore Mouse Driver State 172
 Save Mouse Driver State 170
 Set Alternate Subroutine Call Mask and Address 177
 Set CRT Page Number 184
 Set Double-Speed Threshold 162
 Set/Get Active Acceleration Curve 211
 Set/Get BallPoint Information 211
 Set Graphics Cursor Block 144–45
 Set Interrupt Subroutine Call Mask and Address 154–55
 Set Language for Messages 192
 Set Mickey/Pixel Ratio 158
 Set Minimum/Maximum Horizontal Cursor Position 138
 Set Minimum/Maximum Vertical Cursor Position 140
 Set Mouse Cursor Position 132
 Set Mouse Interrupt Rate 183
 Set Mouse Sensitivity 181
 Set Text Cursor 147
 Set Video Mode 200
 Show Cursor 126
 Software Reset 189
 Swap Interrupt Subroutines 167–68
 INITPAS.ASM program 266
 M20SUB.ASM 249–50
 passing buffer pointers in 102
 SUBS.ASM program 263, 268–70
 TST1.ASM program 251–52
 TST12&20.ASM program 256–58
 TST24.ASM program 259–60
 for using mouse 250–60
 verifying mouse installation from 105–7

MATCH command 28, 43–45
 MATCH statement 43–44, 55–57
 MCGA display adapter 81, 82
 MDA display adapter 81
 memory for mouse menu programs 48
 memory models 97–98
 changing in C/QuickC 100, 242, 246
 changing in QuickBasic 99
 MEND command 28, 35
 MEND statement. *See* MENU...MEND statement
 MENU...MEND statement
 MENU command 28, 34, 37
 MENU.COM program 7, 48, 309–11
 MENU...MEND statement 57–59
 menus. *See* mouse menu programs
 menu subroutine commands 33–34
 example 35
 MEND 28, 35
 MENU 28, 34, 37
 OPTION 28, 34
 message boxes 36, 38–39, 64
 messages
 in MAKEMENU utility 309–11
 in MENU program 309–11
 in mouse driver 305–7
 mickey (unit of distance) 96–97
 Microsoft Bus Mouse 6, 8, 10
 Microsoft EGA Register Interface library. *See* EGA.LIB library
 Microsoft mouse 4–15. *See also* BallPoint mouse
 Microsoft Pascal. *See* Pascal programs
 MNU files 45, 48
 monochrome display adapter 81
 MOUH_INT.C program 245–46
 MOUH_LIB.C program 245–46
 mouse. *See also* BallPoint mouse
 defining sensitivity of 97
 determining position of 96–97, 112
 development of 4–15
 origin of 3–4
 reading of 96–97, 112
 unit of distance for 96–97
 MOUSE.BAS program 232–35
 mouse buttons, status of 96, 112, 128–30, 132–36
 MOUSE.COM driver 23. *See also* mouse driver
 MOUSEDEM.BAS program 235–36
 mouse driver 17–18
 accessing through Interrupt 33H 18, 22–23, 110, 217

- mouse driver, *continued*
 - for BallPoint mouse 13
 - determining status of 113
 - enabling/disabling 186–88
 - initial version of 7
 - international version of 118
 - languages supported by 118
 - list of functions for 119
 - loading 22
 - messages of 305–7
 - testing for 103–7, 110–11
 - version 3.0 7
 - version 4.0 7
 - version 5.0 8
 - version 6.0 9
 - version 7.0 10, 12
 - version 8.0 13
- mouse event commands 32
 - ASSIGN 27, 33
 - BEGIN 27, 33
- Mouse Function 0 86, 96, 103, 110, 124–25
- Mouse Function 1 96, 111, 114, 125–26
- Mouse Function 2 96, 111, 114, 127–28
- Mouse Function 3 97, 112, 128–30
- Mouse Function 4 111, 130–32
- Mouse Function 5 96, 112, 132–34
- Mouse Function 6 96, 112, 134–36
- Mouse Function 7 111, 136–38
- Mouse Function 8 111, 138–40
- Mouse Function 9 90, 92, 111, 140–45, 263
- Mouse Function 10 94, 95, 111, 145–47
- Mouse Function 11 97, 112, 147–48
- Mouse Function 12 115–16, 149–55, 236, 256
- Mouse Function 13 116, 155–56
- Mouse Function 14 117, 156–57, 243
- Mouse Function 15 97, 111, 157–58
- Mouse Function 16 111, 159–60, 263
- Mouse Function 19 111, 161–62
- Mouse Function 20 115, 116, 163–68, 236, 256
- Mouse Function 21 168–69
- Mouse Function 22 169–70
- Mouse Function 23 171–72
- Mouse Function 24 115, 116, 172–77, 239, 259
- Mouse Function 25 115, 177–79
- Mouse Function 26 97, 112, 179–81
- Mouse Function 27 112, 181–82
- Mouse Function 28 182–83
- Mouse Function 29 114, 184
- Mouse Function 30 114, 185
- Mouse Function 31 186–87
- Mouse Function 32 187–88
- Mouse Function 33 188–90
- Mouse Function 34 118, 190–91
- Mouse Function 35 118, 191–92
- Mouse Function 36 192–94
- Mouse Function 37 194–96
- Mouse Function 38 196–97
- Mouse Function 39 112, 197–98
- Mouse Function 40 114, 199–200
- Mouse Function 41 114, 117, 200–201
- Mouse Function 42 96, 201–3
- Mouse Function 43 112, 203–5
- Mouse Function 44 112, 206–7
- Mouse Function 45 112, 207–8
- Mouse Function 47 208–9
- Mouse Function 48 113, 209–11
- Mouse Function 49 211–12
- Mouse Function 50 212–13
- Mouse Function 51 213–15
- Mouse Function 52 215–16
- mouse functions 21, 121–23
 - accessing 18, 22–23, 97–98, 217
 - for button feedback 96, 112, 120
 - calling, from C/QuickC programs 100, 101
 - calling, from interpreted Basic programs 99, 225–35
 - calling, from MASM programs 101
 - calling, from QuickBasic programs 99–100
 - calling, with ABSOLUTE subprogram 225, 226, 229–31
 - calling, with INTERRUPT subprogram 225, 226, 227–29, 232
 - calling, with MOUSE subprogram 225, 226–27, 232–35
 - for cursor control 96–97, 111–12, 119–20
 - for driver control 110–11, 113, 119
 - for interrupt handlers 115–16, 120
 - for language support 118, 120
 - for light-pen emulation 116–17, 120
 - listed by function 119–20
 - listed numerically 122–23
 - for position feedback 112, 120
 - system considerations for 109–13
 - for video control 113–14, 117–18, 120
 - and virtual-screen coordinates 87
- Mouse Hardware Reset function 208–9
- mouse interface programs
 - C/QuickC examples 242–50
 - FORTRAN examples 261–63
 - interpreted Basic examples 219–24
 - MASM examples 250–60
 - modifying existing 313
 - Pascal examples 263–72
 - QuickBasic examples 224–41
- mouse interrupt. *See* Interrupt 33H
- MOUSE.LIB library 22, 97–98, 103, 225, 261, 263, 313
- mouse libraries. *See* MOUSE.LIB library; QBMOUSE.QLB Quick Library
- MOUSEL subroutine 261, 263
- mouse menu commands. *See also names of commands*
 - action 39–43
 - list of 27–28
 - menu subroutine 33–35
 - mouse event 32–33
 - pop-up subroutine 35–39
 - in program structures 32–45, 49–68
- mouse menu programs 18–21
 - allocating memory for 48
 - for applications 72, 76
 - creating 45–48
 - demonstration 72–76
 - DOSOVERLY 70–72
 - for keyboard mapping 20
 - maximum size of 45, 48
 - running 47
 - sample 69–76
 - SIMPLE 69–70
 - specifying color in 31–32
 - statements in 28–32, 49–68
 - testing 46–47
- Mouse Reset and Status function 86, 96, 103, 110, 124–25
- MOUSESEG variable 98, 103, 219
- mouse sensitivity, defining 97, 112, 179–81
- MOUSE subprogram 224, 225, 226–27
- MOUSE.SYS driver 23. *See also* mouse driver
- MOUSE variable 98, 103, 219, 220
- MOUSHGCP.PAS program 264–66
- MOUS_INT.C program 245–46
- MOUS_LIB.C program 245–46
- MSCEXAMP.C program 246–48
- MS-DOS commands, mouse menu overlay for 70–72
- MS-DOS Interrupt 33H. *See* Interrupt 33H
- multiple-column menus 35, 37–38

N

Nishi, Kay 5
 NOTHING command 28, 43
 NOTHING statement 59–60
 numeric parameters 30

O

Olivetti display adapter 82
 ON ERROR statement 84
 OPTION command 28, 34
 OPTION statement 34, 60–61

P

Palo Alto Research Center (PARC)
 4
 parameters
 for ASSIGN statement 50
 attribute 30–32, 55, 58, 62
 for BEGIN statement 52
 conventions for 49
 for EXECUTE statement 53
 for MATCH statement 55
 for MENU...MEND statement 58
 for mouse functions 123
 in mouse menu statements 29–32
 numeric 30
 for OPTION statement 61
 passing of 98
 for POPUP...PEND statement 62–63
 for SELECT statement 65
 string 30
 for TEXT statement 66
 for TYPE statement 67–68
 PARC (Palo Alto Research Center)
 4
 Pascal programs 263–64
 Borland Turbo Pascal 315–16
 calling EGA.LIB library from 280–81
 calling mouse functions from 22, 97, 315–16
 INITPAS.ASM program 266
 MOUSHGCP.PAS program 264–66
 PASEXAMP.PAS program 266–68
 PDEMO.PAS program 270–72
 SUBS.ASM program 268–70
 PASEXAMP.PAS program 266–68
 PDEMO.PAS program 270–72
 PENCIL.BAS program 241
 PENCIL.C program 249
 PEND command 28, 37

PEND statement. *See*
 POPUP...PEND statement
 percent sign (%) 98
 PIANO.BAS program 224
 pointers, passing to buffer 102
 POPUP command 28, 36
 POPUP...PEND statement 37, 38, 61–64
 pop-up subroutine commands 35–36
 example 37–39
 PEND 28, 37
 POPUP 28, 36
 SELECT 28, 37
 TEXT 28, 36–37
 portable computing and BallPoint mouse 12–15
 programs. *See* mouse interface programs; mouse menu programs
 pulses per inch (ppi) 10

Q

QB12&20.BAS program 236–38
 QB24.BAS program 239–41
 QB.BI file 228
 QBINT.BAS program 227–28
 QBMOU.BAS program 226–27
 QBMOUSE.QLB Quick Library 225–26
 QB.QLB Quick Library 225
 QBTEST.BAS program 241
 QuickBasic programs 22
 ABSOLUTE.BAS program 229–31
 calling conventions for 22, 97, 98, 99–100, 101
 calling EGA.LIB library from 276–77
 calling mouse functions from
 Conditional Off 160
 Disable Mouse Driver 186
 Enable Mouse Driver 187–88
 Enumerate Video Modes 201
 Get Active Advanced Functions 213
 Get Button Press Information 134
 Get Button Release Information 136
 Get Button Status and Mouse Position 129
 Get CRT Page Number 185
 Get Cursor Hot Spot 202
 Get Driver Version, Mouse Type, and IRQ Number 193
 Get General Driver Information 196

QuickBasic programs, *continued*

Get Language Number 192
 Get Maximum Virtual Coordinates 197
 Get Minimum/Maximum Virtual Coordinates 211
 Get Mouse Driver State Storage Requirements 168
 Get MOUSE.INI 216
 Get Mouse Sensitivity 182
 Get Screen/Cursor Masks and Mickey Counts 198
 Get Switch Settings 214
 Get User Alternate Interrupt Address 179
 Hide Cursor 127
 Light-Pen Emulation Mode Off 157
 Light-Pen Emulation Mode On 156
 Load Acceleration Curves 205
 Mouse Hardware Reset 209
 Mouse Reset and Status 125
 Read Acceleration Curves 206
 Read Mouse Motion Counters 148
 Restore Mouse Driver State 171
 Save Mouse Driver State 170
 Set Alternate Subroutine Call Mask/Address 175–76
 Set CRT Page Number 184
 Set Double-Speed Threshold 162
 Set/Get Active Acceleration Curve 210
 Set/Get BallPoint Information 210
 Set Graphics Cursor Block 142–43
 Set Interrupt Subroutine Call Mask/Address 152–53
 Set Language for Messages 192
 Set Mickey/Pixel Ratio 158
 Set Minimum/Maximum Horizontal Cursor Position 138
 Set Minimum/Maximum Vertical Cursor Position 139
 Set Mouse Cursor Position 132
 Set Mouse Interrupt Rate 183
 Set Mouse Sensitivity 180
 Set Text Cursor 146
 Set Video Mode 199
 Show Cursor 126
 Software Reset 189
 Swap Interrupt Subroutines 166
 INTERRUPT.BAS program 232
 MOUSE.BAS program 232–35

- QuickBasic programs, *continued*
 MOUSEDEM.BAS program 235–36
 ON ERROR statement in 84–85
 parameter notation in 98
 PENCIL.BAS program 241
 QB12&20.BAS program 236–38
 QB24.BAS program 239–41
 QBINC.BAS program 228–29
 QBINT.BAS program 227–28
 QBMOU.BAS program 226–27
 QBTEST.BAS program 241
 SETVID.BAS 84–85
 for using mouse 224–41
 verifying mouse installation from 104–5
 verifying video mode from 84–85
- QuickC. *See* C/QuickC programs
 quotation marks (") in string parameters 30, 49
- R**
- Read Acceleration Curves function 112, 206–7
 Read Mouse Motion Counters function 97, 112, 147–48
 Read One Register function 283–84
 Read Register Range function 286–87
 Read Register Set function 288–89
 registers, EGA
 calling interface library 274–82
 functions for 283–95
 registers, passing variables with 23, 98
 Restore Mouse Driver State function 171–72
 Revert to Default Registers function 291
 Roark, Raleigh 5–6
 ROM BIOS video routines, calling 281–82
- S**
- sample mouse programs
 in C/QuickC 242–50
 in FORTRAN 261–63
 in interpreted Basic 219–24
 in MASM 250–60
 in Pascal 263–72
 in QuickBasic 224–41
 Save Mouse Driver State function 169–70
 scan lines in hardware text cursor 95
 screen coordinates, virtual vs. physical 85, 87
 screen mask vs. cursor mask
 for graphics cursor 90–93
 for software text cursor 93–95
 screen modes 80–85
 SELECT command 28, 37
 SELECT statement 37, 38–39, 64–65
 Sequence Memory Mode register 281–82
 Set Alternate Subroutine Call Mask and Address function 115, 116, 172–77, 239
 Set CRT Page Number function 114, 184
 Set Double-Speed Threshold function 111, 161–62
 Set/Get Active Acceleration Curve function 112, 207–8
 Set/Get BallPoint Information function 113, 209–11
 Set Graphics Cursor Block function 90, 92, 111, 140–45, 263
 Set Interrupt Subroutine Call Mask and Address function 115–16, 149–55, 236, 256
 Set Language for Messages function 118, 190–91
 Set Mickey/Pixel Ratio function 97, 111, 157–58
 Set Minimum and Maximum Horizontal Cursor Position function 111, 136–38
 Set Minimum and Maximum Vertical Cursor Position function 111, 138–40
 Set Mouse Cursor Position function 111, 130–32
 Set Mouse Interrupt Rate function 182–83
 Set Mouse Sensitivity function 97, 112, 179–81
 Set Text Cursor function 94, 95, 111, 145–47
 SETVID.BAS program 84–85
 SETVID.C program 83–84
 _setvideomode function 83–84, 86
 Set Video Mode function 114, 199–200
 Shaiman, Steve 8
 Show Cursor function 96, 111, 114, 125–26
 Simonyi, Charles 4
 SIMPLE mouse menu program 69–70
 Software Reset function 188–90
 software text cursor 89, 93–95
 source files
 saving as text files 46
 translating to menu files 45–46
 Sprite display adapter 82, 83
 statements in mouse menu program language 28
 ASSIGN 50–51
 BEGIN 51–53
 comments in 32
 components of 29–32
 EXECUTE 53–54
 MATCH 55–57
 MENU...MEND 57–59
 NOTHING 59–60
 OPTION 60–61
 POPUP...PEND 61–64
 SELECT 64–65
 syntax conventions of 49
 TEXT 66–67
 TYPE 67–68, 303–4
 string parameters 30
 Strong, David 5
 SUBS.ASM program 263, 268–70
 Swap Interrupt Subroutines function 115, 116, 163–68, 236, 256
- T**
- TEXT command 28, 36–37
 text files 46
 text-mode cursor 89, 93–95, 145–47
 text mode vs. graphics mode 80, 89
 TEXT statement 38, 66–67
 Toshiba display adapter 83
 trackballs 12, 13
 TST1.ASM program 251–52
 TST1.BAS program 220–21
 TST12&20.ASM program 256–58
 TST24.ASM program 259–60
 TYPE command 28, 41–43
 TYPE statement 41–43, 67–68, 303–4
- U**
- unsupported video modes 118
 uppercase in program statements 28
- V**
- vertical mouse motion
 C/QuickC program for displaying 243
 FORTRAN program for displaying 262–63

vertical mouse motion, *continued*
 interpreted Basic program for
 displaying 221–24
 MASM program for displaying
 252–53
 QuickBasic program for
 displaying 241
VGA display adapter 23, 81, 82
Video7 display adapter 82
video adapters 7, 79–85
video displays 7, 79–85
video modes
 changing 86–87, 113–14
 C/QuickC program for
 changing 86–87
 C/QuickC program for testing
 83–84

video modes, *continued*
 interpreted Basic program for
 testing 85
 QuickBasic program for testing
 84–85
 supported 80–85, 117
 unsupported 118
video paging 114
virtual screen 85–89
 and graphics modes 88
 and text modes 88–89

W

The Wall Street Journal 9, 11
Write One Register function
 285–86

Write Register Range function
 287–88
Write Register Set function 290–91
WS.DEF mouse menu source
 program
 MATCH statement in 56–57
 NOTHING statement in 59–60
 pop-up subroutine in 64

X

Xerox Corporation 4
XGA display adapter 13, 82

The manuscript for this book was prepared and submitted to Microsoft Press in electronic form. Text files were processed and formatted using Microsoft Word.

Principal word processors: Deb Kem and Judith Bloch

Principal proofreader: Deborah Long

Principal typographer: Ruth Pettis

Interior text designer: Darcie S. Furlan

Principal illustrator: Rebecca Geisler

Photographer: Ed Lowe

Cover designer: Rebecca Geisler

Cover color separator: Color Control

Text composition by Microsoft Press in Baskerville with display type in Avant Garde Demi, using the Magna composition system and the Linotronic 300 laser imagesetter.



Printed on recycled paper stock.

The Official Reference to the MS-DOS® Operating System

MICROSOFT® MS-DOS® PROGRAMMER'S REFERENCE

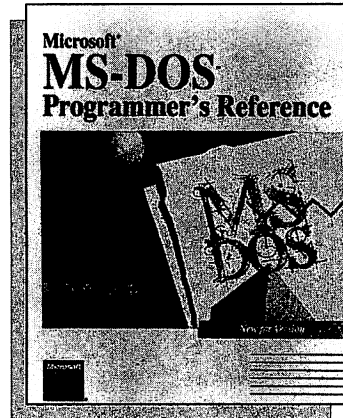
This is a must-have reference for every DOS* programmer!

Previously available only through limited distribution, this comprehensive resource is a must-have reference for all DOS programmers. With new information on DOS 5, this guide covers every MS-DOS system call, including register contents, call definitions, special notes and warnings, version-compatibility information, and full-program examples. There is no more authoritative source of MS-DOS information than this reference.

464 pages, softcover \$24.95

Microsoft Corporation

*DOS as used herein refers to the MS-DOS and PC-DOS operating systems.



Available wherever computer books are sold. Or order directly from Microsoft Press.

To order, call 1-800-MSPRESS or mail this order form:*

YES! Please send me _____ copies of MICROSOFT MS-DOS PROGRAMMER'S REFERENCE (entry code MSPRRE) at only \$24.95 each. **Subtotal** \$ _____

SALES TAX CHART	SHIPPING
Add the applicable sales tax for the following states: AZ, CA, CO, CT, DC, FL, GA, HI, ID, IN, IL, KY, MA, MD, ME, MI, MN, MO, NE, NM, NV, NJ, NY, NC, OH, PA, SC, TN, TX, VA, and WA.	One book \$2.50 Two books \$3.25 Each additional book \$.75

Sales Tax \$ _____

Shipping \$ _____

TOTAL \$ _____

BMR

NAME _____

COMPANY (if applicable) _____

STREET (No P.O. Boxes) _____

CITY _____ STATE _____ ZIP _____

DAYTIME PHONE _____

CREDIT CARD NUMBER _____ EXP. DATE _____

CARDHOLDER SIGNATURE _____

PAYMENT:

- Check/Money Order (U.S. funds)
-  VISA (13 or 16 digits)
-  MasterCard (16 digits)
-  American Express (15 digits)

**FOR FASTER SERVICE CALL
1-800-MSPRESS***

(8AM to 5PM Central Time)
and place your credit card order. Refer to campaign BMR.
All orders shipped RPS or UPS.
No P.O. Boxes please. Allow 2-3 weeks for delivery.

Mail your prepaid order to:

Microsoft Press, P.O. Box 7005, La Vergne, TN 37086-7005

* In Canada, contact Macmillan of Canada,
Attn: Microsoft Press Dept., 164 Commander Blvd.,
Agincourt, Ontario, Canada M1S 3C7 416-293-8141

In the U.K., contact Microsoft Press,
27 Wrights Lane, London W8 5TZ

MICROSOFT[®] MOUSE PROGRAMMER'S REFERENCE



*New for laptop
computers — the
Microsoft BallPoint
mouse!*

The Microsoft mouse has become an industry standard.

The development and overwhelming acceptance of the graphical user interface have helped make the Microsoft mouse one of the world's most popular peripherals. The Microsoft mouse is in use on more than six million personal computers today. No software program—commercial or custom—is complete without support for the Microsoft mouse. Now you can add mouse support to all your MS-DOS[®] programs.

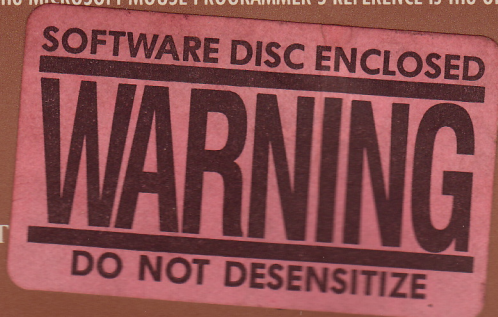
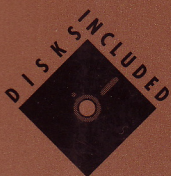
The MICROSOFT MOUSE PROGRAMMER'S REFERENCE was created by a team of experts from the Hardware Division of Microsoft Corporation. This single reference provides all the software and how-to information you need to incorporate a sophisticated mouse interface into your programs. Fully updated to cover the Microsoft BallPoint[™] mouse and the mouse driver version 8, this new edition includes:

- An overview of mouse programming using mouse menus and the mouse programming interface
- Sample programs that demonstrate mouse programming in seven PC programming languages
- A complete reference to all mouse function calls, including 15 new functions
- Coverage of the new utility COMPASS, which lets the user define the internal device orientation for the Microsoft BallPoint mouse
- Specifics of writing mouse programs for IBM[®] EGA video modes
- Details of the mouse menu programming language, including statement formats, program structure, and a guide to customizing and running mouse menus

Companion Disks Included

The 5¹/₄-inch companion disks contain MOUSE.LIB, EGA.LIB, sample mouse menus, and a collection of valuable programming examples in interpreted Basic, Microsoft QuickBasic[™], Microsoft C, Microsoft QuickC[®], Microsoft Macro Assembler, FORTRAN, and Pascal.

The MICROSOFT MOUSE PROGRAMMER'S REFERENCE is the official documentation for the Microsoft mouse.



U.S.A. \$34.95
U.K. £28.95 (VAT)
Canada \$44.95

[Recommended]

ISBN 1-55615-336-8



9 0000



9 781556 153365